JMIR Serious Games

Journal Impact Factor (JIF) (2023): 3.8
Volume 7 (2019), Issue 1 ISSN 2291-9279 Editor-in-Chief: Gunther Eysenbach, MD, MPH

Contents

Original Papers

A Novel Clinician-Orchestrated Virtual Reality Platform for Distraction During Pediatric Intravenous Procedures in Children With Hemophilia: Randomized Controlled Trial (e10902)
Amy Dunn, Jeremy Patterson, Charmaine Biega, Alice Grishchenko, John Luna, Joseph Stanek, Robert Strouse. 2

Exploring Efficacy of a Serious Game (Tobbstop) for Smoking Cessation During Pregnancy: Randomized Controlled Trial (e12835)
Francesc Marin-Gomez, Rocio Garcia-Moreno Marchán, Anabel Mayos-Fernandez, Gemma Flores-Mateo, Esther Granado-Font, Maria Barrera Uriarte, Jordi Duch, Cristina Rey-Reñones. 13

Young People's Knowledge of Antibiotics and Vaccinations and Increasing This Knowledge Through Gaming: Mixed-Methods Study Using e-Bug (e10915)
Charlotte Eley, Vicki Young, Catherine Hayes, Neville Verlander, Cliodna McNulty. 25

Serious Games in Surgical Medical Education: A Virtual Emergency Department as a Tool for Teaching Clinical Reasoning to Medical Students (e13028)
Seung-Hun Chon, Ferdinand Timmermann, Thomas Dratsch, Nikolai Schuelper, Patrick Plum, Felix Berlth, Rabi Datta, Christoph Schramm, Stefan Haneder, Martin Späth, Martin Dübbers, Julia Kleinert, Tobias Raupach, Christiane Bruns, Robert Kleinert. 40

Energy Expenditure and Enjoyment During Active Video Gaming Using an Adapted Wii Fit Balance Board in Adults with Physical Disabilities: Observational Study (e11326)
Laurie Malone, Mohanraj Thirumalai, Sangeetha Padalabalanarayanan, Whitney Neal, Sean Bowman, Tapan Mehta. 51

Effectiveness of a Behavior Change Technique–Based Smartphone Game to Improve Intrinsic Motivation and Physical Activity Adherence in Patients With Type 2 Diabetes: Randomized Controlled Trial (e11444)
Christoph Höchsmann, Denis Infanger, Christopher Klenk, Karsten Königstein, Steffen Walz, Arno Schmidt-Trucksäss. 66

Active Video Games for Rehabilitation in Respiratory Conditions: Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis (e10116)
Joshua Simmich, Anthony Deacon, Trevor Russell. 78

Creating a Theoretically Grounded Gaming App to Increase Adherence to Pre-Exposure Prophylaxis: Lessons From the Development of the Viral Combat Mobile Phone Game (e11861)
Laura Whiteley, Leandro Mena, Lacey Craker, Meredith Healy, Larry Brown. 93

XSL•FO
RenderX

Original Paper

A Novel Clinician-Orchestrated Virtual Reality Platform for Distraction During Pediatric Intravenous Procedures in Children With Hemophilia: Randomized Controlled Trial

Amy Dunn[1], MD; Jeremy Patterson[2,3], BFA; Charmaine F Biega[4], RN; Alice Grishchenko[3], MFA; John Luna[3], MFA; Joseph R Stanek[4], MS; Robert Strouse[2], MFA

[1]Nationwide Children's Hospital, Division of Hematology, Oncology and BMT, The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH, United States

[2]The Research Institute at Nationwide Children's Hospital, Columbus, OH, United States

[3]The Ohio State University Advanced Computing Center for the Arts and Design, Columbus, OH, United States

[4]Nationwide Children's Hospital Division of Hematology/Oncology/BMT, Columbus, OH, United States

Corresponding Author:
Amy Dunn, MD
Nationwide Children's Hospital
Division of Hematology, Oncology and BMT
The Ohio State University
700 Children's Drive
Columbus, OH, 43205
United States
Phone: 1 614 722 3564
Fax: 1 614 722 3669
Email: amy.dunn@nationwidechildrens.org

Abstract

Background: Needles are frequently required for routine medical procedures. Children with severe hemophilia require intensive intravenous (IV) therapy to treat and prevent life-threatening bleeding and undergo hundreds of IV procedures. Fear of needle-related procedures may lead to avoidance of future health care and poor clinical outcomes. Virtual reality (VR) is a promising distraction technique during procedures, but barriers to commercially available VR platforms for pediatric health care purposes have prevented widespread use.

Objective: We hypothesized that we could create a VR platform that would be used for pediatric hemophilia care, allow clinician orchestration, and be safe and feasible to use for distraction during IV procedures performed as part of complex health care.

Methods: We created a VR platform comprising wireless, adjustable, disposable headsets and a suite of remotely orchestrated VR games. The platform was customized for a pediatric hemophilia population that required hands-free navigation to allow access to a child's hands or arms for procedures. A hemophilia nurse observing the procedure performed orchestration. The primary endpoint of the trial was safety. Preliminary feasibility and usability of the platform were assessed in a single-center, randomized clinical trial from June to December 2016. Participants were children with hemophilia aged 6-18 years. After obtaining informed consent, 25 patients were enrolled and randomized. Each subject, 1 caregiver, and 1 hemophilia nurse orchestrator assessed the degree of preprocedural nervousness or anxiety with an anchored, combined modified visual analog (VAS)/FACES scale. Each participant then underwent a timed IV procedure with either VR or standard of care (SOC) distraction. Each rater assessed the distraction methods using the VAS/FACES scale at the completion of the IV procedure, with questions targeting usability, engagement, impact on procedural anxiety, impact on procedural pain, and likability of the distraction technique. Participants, caregivers, and nurses also rated how much they would like to use VR for future procedures. To compare the length of procedure time between the groups, Mann-Whitney test was used.

Results: Of the 25 enrolled children, 24 were included in the primary analysis. No safety concerns or VR sickness occurred. The median procedure time was 10 (range 1-31) minutes in the VR group and was comparable to 9 (range 3-20) minutes in the SOC group (P=.76). Patients in both the groups reported a positive influence of distraction on procedural anxiety and pain. Overall, in 80% (34/45) of the VR evaluations, children, caregivers, and nurses reported that they would like to use VR for future procedures.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Conclusions: We demonstrated that an orchestrated, VR environment could be developed and safely used during pediatric hemophilia care for distraction during IV interventions. This platform has the potential to improve patient experience during medical procedures.

Trial Registration: Clinical Trials.gov NCT03507582; https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03507582 (Archived by WebCite at http://www.webcitation.org/73G75upA3)

(JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e10902) doi:10.2196/10902

KEYWORDS

anxiety; distraction; hemophilia; intravenous; mobile phone; needle; pediatric; virtual reality

Introduction

Medical procedures involving needles induce fear in most people, especially children [1-6]. However, treatment for some medical conditions requires frequent needle sticks. Balancing the treatment needs for life-threatening conditions with the fear and anxiety imposed by the mechanism of these treatments is an important challenge for the medical community. In addition to the load needle sticks impose on patients and families, the medical system and medical providers also bear burden and expenses related to needles. One of the conditions that requires the most needle-intensive care is hemophilia. Both hemophilia A (HA) and B (HB) are severe congenital bleeding disorders. Without intravenous (IV) infusions of clotting factor concentrates, children with hemophilia experience life- and limb-threatening bleeding. Most children with hemophilia begin routine IV infusions of factor concentrate between the age of 1 and 3 years and continue infusions 2-3 times per week for life. This translates to thousands of necessary needle sticks over the course of their lives and a high treatment burden related to needles [7]. Needle fear related to IV procedures, particularly in children with hemophilia, can progress to blood-injection-injury phobia (needle phobia), treatment avoidance, and poor adherence, all of which can contribute to poor medical outcomes [8]. Psychological interventions, such as distraction and hypnosis, can reduce needle-related pain and distress in pediatrics [9]. A recent systematic review and meta-analysis demonstrated that distraction could lead to reductions in child- and observer-reported pain and distress during needle procedures. However, among the major elements of distraction, the relative importance of (1) no or low-tech versus high-tech distracters; (2) child engaging versus passive distracters; (3) degree of adult involvement; and (4) the availability of child choice in the success of these distracters is unclear [10]. Specific virtual reality (VR)-based distractions have shown promise in clinical settings, such as dentistry, IV placement, occupational or physical therapy, and burn care [9,11-24]. In particular, VR approaches have demonstrated decreased pain associated with dental procedures, physical therapy, and burn dressing changes. Although various consumer-grade VR technologies are available, most carry barriers that prevent clinical implementation [11-18,20-24]. Cost is another barrier, with the top-selling commercial unit having an approximate cost of US $500. This includes the head-mounted display (HMD), wireless controllers, and proximity sensors, but not a personal computer capable of running VR content, with a cost of approximately US $2000. On the low end, VR content is available for smartphones and low-cost HMDs, at around US $800 for the smart device and approximately US $35 for HMD. In either case, these estimates do not include the cost of content or technical support to configure and maintain the systems. Additionally, the unit is tethered to the personal computer and, as a result, cannot easily move between locations. Infection concerns exist with nondisposable headsets particularly in a pediatric setting, such as a hematology or oncology clinic. Additionally, most commercial VR platforms do not allow a medical provider to direct or modify the VR environment in response to patient distress and also focus on the experience of patients and not of caregivers.

Despite the barriers to VR implementation described above, we hypothesized that a children's hospital-based team with expertise in hemophilia patient care and user experience technology could create a safe and clinically feasible VR ecosystem that met the needs of patients, caregivers, and medical providers during IV procedures. Assessing safety and testing the feasibility of the designed ecosystem in a complex clinical environment were the goals of the project. A comprehensive hemophilia clinic visit was selected to test the safety, feasibility, and likeability of the ecosystem. During these visits, patients see multiple providers in addition to having IV procedures, so the efficiency of clinic flow is vitally important. We specifically designed the ecosystem for children with hemophilia because patients with hemophilia need a frequent distraction from needles safe and successful integration into a complex clinic environment would demonstrate the likelihood of feasibility in less complex situations.

Methods

Virtual Reality Platform Design

The VR platform design team consisted of the Nationwide Children's Hospital Hemophilia Treatment Center (HTC) staff and the user experience technology team. The HTC staff included a hematologist, nurse clinicians, a social worker, and a psychologist. The user experience team included a project lead, industrial designer, and 2 game designers, 1 of which also served as the illustrator and visual designer. The team designed the platform for boys and girls aged 6-18 years with HA or HB. Ideal features were identified through reoccurring meetings, which included observation of HTC visits and IV procedures. Specific platform design needs were identified. First, the cost of the overall system needed to be low. The system needed to be technically easy to implement and maintain for the nursing team. Games needed to be pediatric friendly but of sufficient

XSL•FO
RenderX

quality to maintain the interest of patients and families. Additionally, the video content needed to limit the possibility of VR sickness. Importantly, the majority of IV infusions require that the medical team has easy access to the hands and arms of a patient. This meant that game control mechanics needed to be hands free and help ensure the patient remained still. Because medical care is fluid and each patient experience is unique, the design team needed to allow the medical team to orchestrate the patient experience in the real-time to meet individual needs. We also sought ways to include caregivers in the game experience because parental anxiety around IV procedures can contribute to poor outcomes, and family-centered care is an important tenet of pediatric care. The team was also mindful of the need of the system to minimize the risk of transmitting infections agents from any game component. Each element of the ecosystem—the HMD, games, and the orchestration—was refined with input from volunteer pediatric hemophilia nurse clinicians, pediatric hematologists, and children without hemophilia. The ecosystem components were also demonstrated at hemophilia community events, and patients with hemophilia and their families gave feedback to the design team. The final VR intervention used for the clinical trial consisted of custom, cordless, multisized, disposable headsets, which enabled the use of VR through iPod Touch, and immersive custom games with hands-free navigation. Navigation techniques included head glances and breath. The mechanism for nurse orchestration (Figure 1; Multimedia Appendix 1) was software running on an iPad dashboard that wirelessly communicated to iPod Touch. The orchestration dashboard offered a suite of tools allowing a nurse to respond to patient needs by deploying mini-games or providing relocation to a new setting in the VR ecosystem. The dashboard also allowed parents to monitor their child's progress. Moreover, an expert practitioner could observe patient state and, upon noticing stress, could trigger an intervention to act as a distraction method. The system's communication platform utilized an internal server as a relay between the dashboard and the iOS device, which ran VR activities. All signal messages passed through the intermediary system and were logged and tracked against the identifier for the orchestrated session and the type of orchestration command. Message types recorded included commands to enter or exit a mini-game, transport the patient to a virtual location, connect to a paired iOS device, adjust the volume, open the video feed from the iOS device's camera, and calibration of the headset units for fit and viewing preference. After finalization of the platform, safety and feasibility of platform integration into a routine comprehensive HTC visit were explored. Comprehensive visits included care from multiple providers during a specified timeframe, and anything that impeded clinic flow was judged not feasible. The complexity of the care for patients with hemophilia is reflected in the number and diversity of providers available in each HTC clinic. Patients are seen for comprehensive care visits once or twice per year and during those visits are seen by numerous providers based on individual needs. This can include hematologists, nurse clinicians, research nurses, psychologists, social workers, physical therapists, nutritionists, orthopedists, dentists, genetic counselors, radiologists, advocacy coordinators, and phlebotomy staff. For the pilot study, the length of the IV procedure time was chosen as a surrogate marker of feasibility.

Study Design, Patients, and Randomization

A prospective, monocentric, unblinded, randomized clinical trial was performed (Clinical Trials.gov NCT03507582). Multimedia Appendix 1 provides details of the trial protocol. After Institutional Review Board approval, children with HA or HB, aged 6-18 years, who were cared for in our HTC were screened for eligibility. Eligible patients had to be seen for a comprehensive HTC visit defined as seeing >3 specialty hemophilia providers during one visit and have a clinically indicated IV laboratory draw or factor infusion. Patients seen between July 1 and December 31, 2016, were eligible for participation if they and their parents or guardians could speak and write in English. Patients who were unable to use the VR equipment (visual, cognitive, or hearing impairment that precluded engagement with the VR environment), who had a known history of severe motion sickness, or uncontrolled seizures were not eligible (n=1). Those who met screening criteria were approached for participation (n=25). A hemophilia nurse obtained paper informed consent and age-appropriate assent. Enrolled patients were block randomized by computer-generated random allocation to study groups using a prespecified seed. The nurse performing randomization was blinded to group allocation. Recruited participants were randomly assigned using a 2:1 ratio to VR or standard of care (SOC) distraction with a stratified block design to maintain age strata of 12 patients aged 6-12 years and 12 patients aged 13-18 years. SOC distraction was any technique routinely available in the hematology clinic that did not include VR (ie, smart devices, bubbles, and videos).

Study Intervention

All enrolled patients had a clinically indicated IV procedure. A procedure timer and survey instruments were incorporated into the orchestration iPad. A modified visual analog (VAS)/FACES (Figure 2) rating scale was used to assess the distraction techniques. The scale did not undergo specific psychometric testing; however, the FACES scale is routinely used in our hemophilia clinic. A unipolar, horizontal scale was employed to increase understandability, uniformity, and sensitivity [25-27]. All participants, caregivers, and nurses (raters) were educated in how to use the VAS/FACES scale prior to beginning the study procedure by sliding a bar below the scale picture in response to an anchored question. Raters were not blinded to participant's distraction group, and each rater answered the study questions independently. Immediately before the IV procedure, children in the VR group were introduced to the headset, game options, and navigation techniques. Then, before being positioned for the procedure, each patient, a caregiver with them for the procedure, and a hemophilia nurse assessed the participant's level of preprocedural anxiety using a (VAS)/FACES scale answering the question: How worried or nervous is or are you or your child or your patient about the IV procedure? Sliding the bar to the left (toward 0) represented a low degree of preprocedural worry or nervousness and to the right (toward 100) represented the highest degree of nervousness or worry. The terms nervous and worry were substituted for anxiety owing to the young age of many participants. After being positioned for the procedure, patients in the SOC group used whatever distraction they preferred, whereas patients in

XSL•FO
RenderX

the VR group put on the headset, launched the game of their choice, and explored the VR environments. The nurse clinician was located next to the patient and deployed VR orchestration tools as she deemed necessary. The guardian was present throughout in both the groups. The study methodology was not altered during the trial. No revisions to the VR platform were performed or required during the trial.

Primary Outcome

The primary aim of the study was to assess safety concerns and feasibility of integration of the VR platform into a comprehensive HTC visit. Safety concerns included discomfort from HMD, infection, and VR sickness. Barriers to feasibility that were assessed included technical issues with the set-up or orchestration. The primary surrogate marker of feasibility was the duration of the IV procedure in both study groups. Procedure time was the length of time from the moment a patient was positioned for the procedure to the completion of the procedure, and the primary and secondary outcomes did not change during the course of the trial. No VR platform performance issues or unexpected events related to the platform were encountered during the trial.

Figure 1. Manual orchestration of child engaging events in a virtual reality environment from a connected virtual digital interface from an embedded viewpoint.

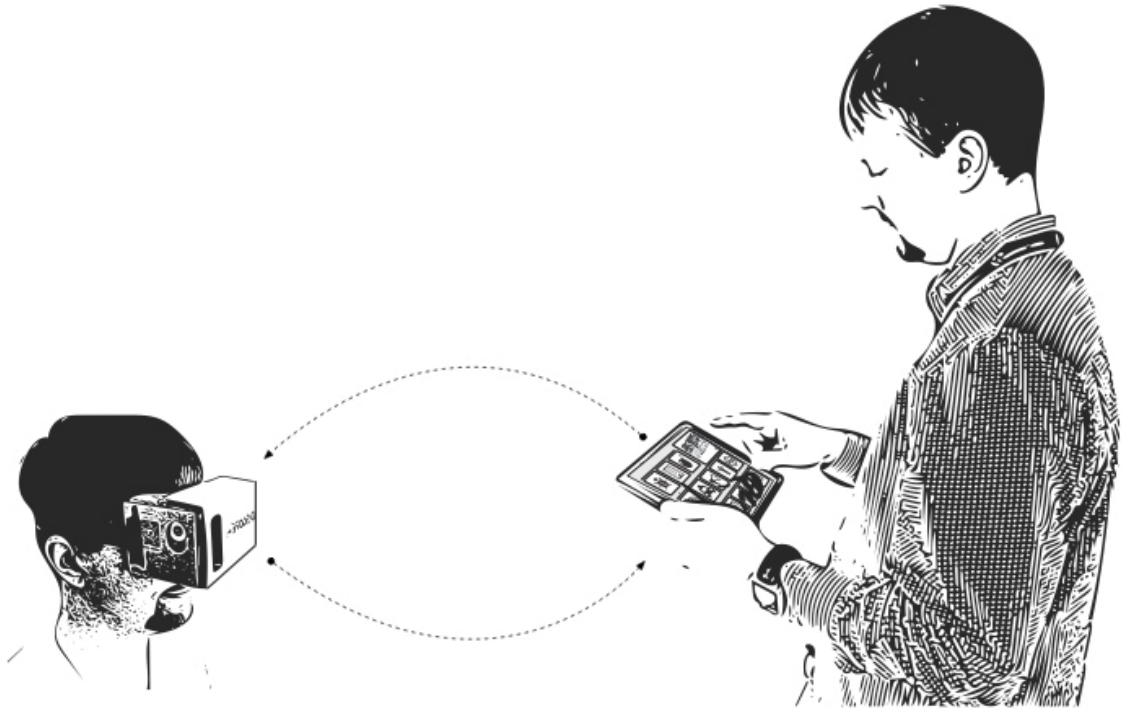
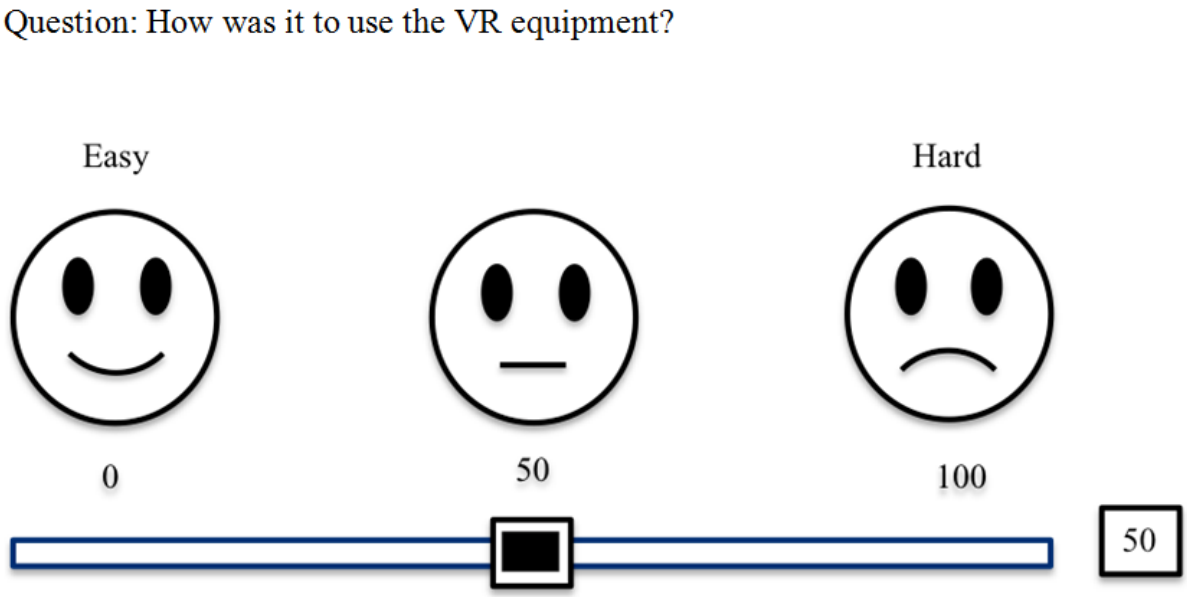


Figure 2. An example of the modified visual analog/FACES scale. VR: virtual reality.



XSL•FO
RenderX

Secondary Outcomes

Effectiveness of the Distraction Technique

Both patient groups assessed the effectiveness of their distraction techniques following the procedure by answering 3 questions as follows. (1) "Did the distraction technique keep you/your child /your patient engaged?" The anchors were 0=It really kept them engaged and 100=It really did not keep them engaged; (2) "Do you think the distraction technique/s changed you/your child/your patient's nervousness/anxiety level during the IV procedure?" The anchors were 0=it decreased nervousness/anxiety a lot and 100=it increased nervousness/anxiety a lot; (3) "How did the distraction technique/s affect pain during your/your child/your patient's IV procedure?" The anchors were 0=it made pain a lot better and 100=it made pain a lot worse.

Usability and Likeability

For patients randomized to the VR arm, data on the use of the VR equipment were recorded by the nurse orchestrator at the end of each procedure. Data were categorized if a participant wore the VR equipment: (1) during the entire procedure; (2) part of the procedure; or (3) only prior to the procedure. In addition, participants were asked to rate the usability of the VR equipment using the VAS/FACES scale to answer "How easy was it for you/your child/your patient to use the VR equipment?" A score of 0 represented "really easy to use," and a score of 100 correlated with "really hard to use." Lastly, participants were asked to use the VAS/FACES scale to assess the VR likeability by answering "How much would you/your child/your patient like to use VR for future IV procedures?" A score of 0 equated to "they would really like to use VR again" and 100 meant "they would really not like to use it again."

Statistical Analysis

This was a pilot feasibility study in a rare population. With insufficient background data on the overall feasibility of using VR technology in a clinical setting, a sample of 24 patients was selected to collect pilot data on the safety and usability, logistical issues of implementation, and to assess the durability and adaptability in the design of the equipment. The study was designed to be randomized and include a control SOC group to perform a preliminary test on the hypothesis that the length of time for IV procedures would be similar between the groups, but the sample size did not allow testing for equivalence. The justifications for this sample size were based on the rationale about feasibility, obtaining adequate precision on numerical estimates, and regulatory considerations [19]. This sample size allowed for evaluating the potential utility of the VR distraction technique on a wide range of ages and would result in parameter estimates that would aid in adequately powering future studies that would directly assess the benefits of VR in clinical settings.

Clinical data, including survey instrument data and adverse events, were entered into a hospital-compliant internet data entry system (REDcap) that included password protection and internal quality checks. Demographic data were captured from the patients' electronic medical records. All demographic and safety data were described using summary statistics. To evaluate the hypothesis that the procedure time would be similar between the intervention and SOC groups, Mann-Whitney test was used. The length of IV procedure time was summarized by presenting mean and corresponding 95% CI as well as median and range. Kruskal-Wallis tests were applied to compare VAS/FACES scores given by the 3 rater groups as the secondary aim. Scores for the rater groups were summarized with medians and ranges. Statistical analyses were performed using the base R statistical package (R Foundation for Statistical Computing, Vienna, Austria).

Results

Demographics

In this study, 26 patients were screened for enrollment. There was 1 screen failure in a patient with moderately controlled seizures; therefore, 25 eligible patients aged 6-18 (median age, 13) years participated in study (Figure 3). In total, 16 patients were randomized to VR and 9 to SOC group; 1 patient in the VR arm was excluded from the analysis because of inability to wear the HMD over glasses. Of the remaining 24 patients, 83% (20/24) participants were males and 17% (4/24) were females; 54% (13/24) had HA and 46% (11/24) had HB, 42% (10/24) had severe hemophilia, 58% (14/24) had nonsevere hemophilia, and 54% (13/24) were on routine prophylaxis (Table 1). No patient harms or unintended effects were seen in either the SOC or VR group.

Outcomes

Safety

No adverse events occurred during the trial. No patient experienced VR sickness, seizures, discomfort from the HMD, or infection-related events related to the VR experience.

Procedure Time

The median procedure time was 10 (range 1-31) minutes in the VR group, and was similar to 9 (range 3-20) minutes in the SOC group (P=.76; Table 1). The mean procedure time was 12.3 minutes (95% CI 7.2-17.4) in the VR group and 10.1 minutes (95% CI 5.7-14.6) in the SOC group.

Virtual Reality Equipment Usability

In this study, 60% (9/24) patients wore VR equipment during their entire procedure, 27% (4/24) utilized VR for part of their procedure, and 13% (2/24) only used VR prior to the procedure. Of the 4 participants who used VR for a part of their procedure, 1 removed the headset after the IV stick, while 3 used VR at the beginning of their procedures, removed the headset to watch the IV stick, and then resumed VR. The 2 participants, who only used VR prior to their procedures, chose to watch the entirety of the IV procedure. No technical issues were noted with the orchestration dashboard, headsets, or game hardware.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 3. Trial flow diagram. VR: virtual reality.

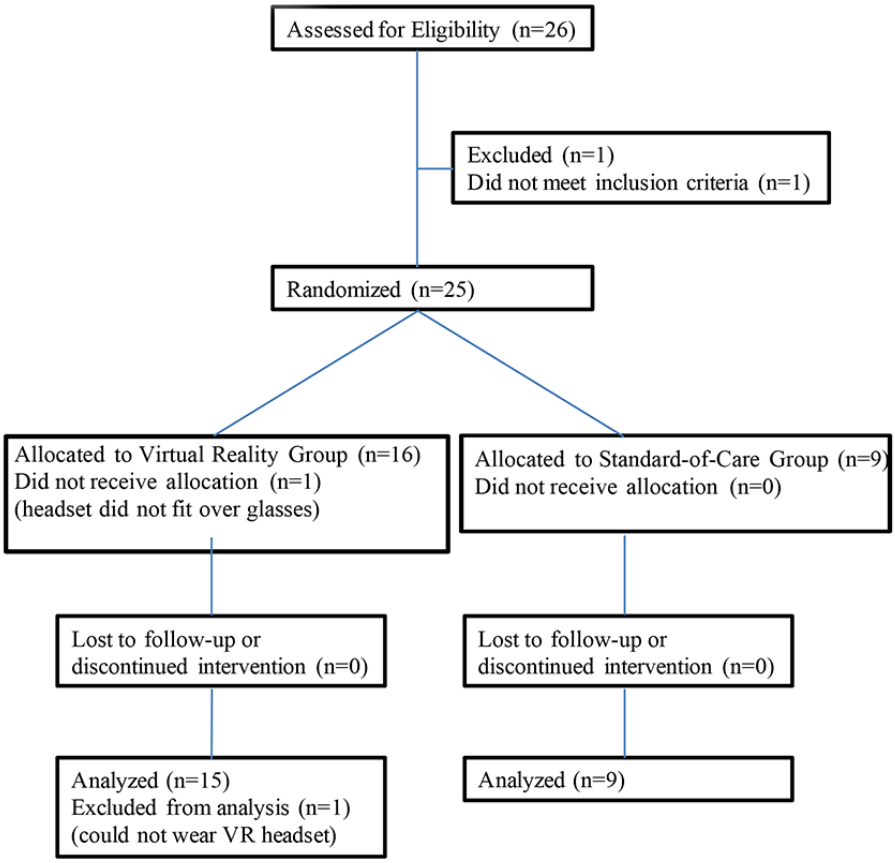


Table 1. Participants' characteristics and median procedure times.

Variable	Virtual reality (n=15)	Control (n=9)	*P* value
Males, n (%)	12 (80)	8 (89)	.99
Median age, years	12.2	12.8	.56
Hemophilia type, n (%)			.99
Hemophilia A	8 (53)	5 (56)	
Hemophilia B	7 (47)	4 (44)	
Hemophilia severity, n (%)			.36
Mild	3 (20)	3 (33)	
Moderate	4 (27)	4 (44)	
Severe	8 (53)	2 (22)	
Routine prophylaxis, n (%)	9 (60)	4 (44)	.68
Median procedure time, minutes	10	9	.76
Median orchestration events, n	17	N/A[a]	N/A

[a]N/A: not applicable.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Table 2. Median pre- and postprocedural visual analog/FACES scale score.

Question	Virtual reality
Nervousness prior to intravenous procedure (0=None, 100=Very)	
Nurse response	14
Caregiver response	25
Patient response	3
Assessment of the distraction technique	
Engaged or attentive (0=Yes it did, 100=Did not)	
Nurse response	13
Caregiver response	13
Patient response	18
Impact on anxiety (0=decreased, 100=increased)	
Nurse response	3
Caregiver response	15
Patient response	8
Impact on pain (0=lessened, 100=worsened)	
Nurse response	4
Caregiver response	4
Patient response	3
Likability (0=really like, 100=did not like)	
Nurse response	1
Caregiver response	4
Patient response	3
Questions for the virtual reality group only	
Ease of using the virtual reality equipment (0=Easy, 100=Hard)	
Nurse response	2
Caregiver response	9
Patient response	7
Virtual reality for future intravenous procedures (0=likely, 100=not likely)	
Nurse response	3
Caregiver response	8
Patient response	12

The VR equipment usability was favorably scored (0=easy to use, 100=hard to use) with median scores of 7, 9, and 2 by participants, guardians, and the nurse, respectively (Table 2). Additionally, patients, caregivers, and nurses positively rated the desire to use VR for future procedures on a scale of 0 (would really like to use VR again) to 100 (would really not like to use VR again); in majority (36/45, 80%) of evaluations, children, caregivers, and nurses reported that they would like to use VR for future procedures (score <50).

Orchestration Events

The number of deliberate orchestration events per patient, including commands to enter or exit a mini-game, transport the player patient to a virtual location, connect to a paired iOS device, adjust the volume, open the video feed from the iOS device's camera, or calibrate the headset units for fit and viewing preference, was available for 13 of the 15 patients. A server storage issue led to data loss, resulting in missing orchestration data for 2 patients. In the remaining 13 patients, there were a median of 17 orchestration events (range 7-28) per procedure.

Nervousness or Worry and Pain

The groups did not differ statistically in preprocedural nervousness or worry, as rated by the participant (P=.67), caregiver (P=.37), or nurse (P=.27; Table 2). Median nervousness rating for the VR group was 3 (range 0-94) and 12 for the SOC group (range 0-100). Preprocedural patient nervousness did differ between age groups (P=.002) with those aged 6-12 years (median 50, range 0-100) being significantly more nervous compared with those aged 13-18 years (median

XSL•FO
RenderX

0, range 0-13). Preprocedural patient nervousness did not statistically differ between those on and not on prophylaxis (*P*=.64). Median nervousness rating was 6 (range 0-94) for those on prophylaxis and 27 for those not on prophylaxis (range 0-100). Both groups favorably viewed distraction techniques in terms of the effect on procedural anxiety, with median responses being 8 for the VR group and 10 for the SOC group (0=the distraction technique decreased anxiety and 100=the technique increased anxiety). Both VR and SOC distraction techniques had a positive influence on procedural pain (0=made pain better, 100=made pain worse); no statistically significant differences were observed between raters in the VR or SOC groups (Table 2).

Level of Engagement

Scores of participants, nurses, and caregivers did not significantly differ between VR and SOC distraction techniques in terms of the ability to engage and hold attention (0=held attention and was engaging and 100=did not hold attention and was not engaging; Table 2).

Discussion

Principal Findings

This study represented the first known effort to translate VR from a research environment to a functioning pediatric clinic environment as a comprehensive platform including custom content (games), tools, and hardware (HMDs). The final platform included a high-tech, VR-based, child engaging distraction with child choice incorporated into a platform that allowed for need-based adult involvement. The final HMDs were multisized, lightweight, and disposable and had an estimated unit cost of less than US $55. If manufactured at scale, the estimated cost of the headphones, headsets, lenses, cardboard, elastic, and hooks and loops is less than US $20. HMDs accommodated 2 distinct size faces—one for average face size of patients over 15 years of age and another for that of patients under 15 years of age. The game navigation was hands-free and wireless. Games produced were designed to appeal to a wide age range of male and female patients. Games were also engineered to achieve a consistent 30 frames per second playback rate on limited resource devices. Additionally, games afforded the player control over a child engaging gameplay environment without requiring the use of the patients' hands—a unique affordance ingrained in this platform. The system achieved hands-free gameplay via the introduction of proprietary hardware in the custom HMD, which is capable of monitoring the breathing of the play and providing this feedback to the games. The system did not require a high-end computer or technical expertise for installation, and the orchestration features allowed for customization to patient needs and family engagement. Successful incorporation into the clinic was demonstrated by the lack of safety and technical issues. Although our sample size did not allow equivalence comparison, we had similar lengths of procedure times in both groups.

The games themselves mitigated the risk of the player developing simulator sickness with the standard technique of introducing a static frame of reference during periods of motion. While static frames of reference are a conventional technique used to prevent VR sickness, the technique's manifestation in our system was novel in approach in that the technique utilized world elements as the static frame of reference. This execution of the technique, therefore, did not sacrifice the immersive quality of the environment. In addition, the static frames introduced a form of kinesthetic reinforcement for the players' physical sensation to the virtual world, thus lending to their immersive quality. For example, in the snorkeling game in the game world, players observed a projection of a virtual diving mask in their game view. The projection not only acted as a static frame of reference that thematically fits within the game environment but also created a relationship between the physical sensation of the physical HMD and the virtual mask as seen in the game world.

Our environments incorporated a core component of distraction theory most significantly, with affordance of control and choice as a means to distract [28]. This method is inherent in child engaging games, with our platform bringing this method to the patient population through hands-free game controls and thus representing the first set of pediatric-focused games, which utilize this technique while not requiring hand movement to interact and thus bringing this technique via games to patients receiving IV procedures. In total, the techniques employed throughout our ecosystem resulted in games that apply distraction theory through child engaging VR environments while not triggering simulator sickness in participants, as demonstrated in the collected data.

Pain and anxiety related to procedures is a concern for patients, families, and providers, particularly in pediatric settings. Because children with hemophilia have frequent needle procedures, they represent a population that could really benefit from VR-based distraction. While there is strong evidence for the success of distraction during pediatric procedures, it remains unclear which of the 4 main elements of effectiveness (high vs no or low tech, child engaging vs passive, degree of adult involvement, and availability of child choice) contribute to the success of the technique [9,10]. Encouragingly, 87% of participants wore the VR equipment during some or all of their procedure, and overall scores regarding the impact of VR on pain, anxiety, usability, likeability, and level of engagement were favorable.

Limitations

The trial was limited by small sample size and single-institution design. Additionally, we studied only a single intervention, so we were unable to test if the VR platform would continue to perform well with future use in the same patient. The study was underpowered to evaluate the equivalence of procedure time. The study was also underpowered to compare VR versus SOC attributes, but the majority of caregivers and providers had favorable ratings of VR, and 80% of participants, all of whom had previous experience with SOC distraction in our clinic, reported a desire to use VR for future procedures. The outcomes related to pain and anxiety were self-reported. Addition of objectives measures of distress, such as blood pressure and heart rate, would strengthen future studies.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Conclusions

We demonstrated that a custom-designed VR platform could be used safely during IV procedures in a pediatric hemophilia population with specific design needs. These results warrant future exploration to assess the impact of our platform on its ability to reduce the burden of IV procedures on patients, parents, and clinical care providers. Future studies will be needed to validate our findings in other disease populations, clinical settings, and institutions with larger participant numbers. While patients with hemophilia may have more IV experiences than most children, it is likely that the positive effects of high-quality distraction would be generalizable to IV procedures in any pediatric population. We plan larger studies comparing (1) our child engaging platform versus a passive distracter; (2) the degree to which adult involvement impacts successfulness; (3) the importance of the availability of child choice in distracters; (4) ability to decrease procedural chemical sedation; and (5) cost. Additionally, nonrandomized trials allowing children to choose their distraction technique of choice during procedures would generate useful information. The inclusion of objective measures of pain and anxiety would strengthen future studies. This study suggests that a custom VR ecosystem with clinician orchestration is a promising modality to provide distraction during IV procedures in pediatrics with the potential to mitigate the perception of procedural pain and anxiety.

Acknowledgments

The authors would like to thank the patients and staff of the Nationwide Children's Hospital HTC in Columbus, Ohio, for their support and participation. Additionally, we thank Ms Beth Burkhart, MBA, for assistance with the development and maintenance of the REDcap database, Ms Jessie Haines for administrative support, Mr Roy Goudy for video assistance, and Dr Michael Dunn for critical review of the manuscript. This study was funded by Ohio State University Center for Clinical and Translational Science/Nationwide Children's Hospital Research Information Solutions & Innovations Voucher #3796: UL1TR001070 and The National Hemophilia Foundation Nursing Excellence Award.

Conflicts of Interest

AD reports grants, personal fees, and nonfinancial support from Bayer, CSL Behring, Pfizer, Shire, and Hema Biologics; grants and personal fees from Bioverativ; personal fees and nonfinancial support from Medscape and NovoNordisk; and grants from Alnylam and Octapharma during the conduct of the study, and other from Little Seed Inc outside the submitted work. JP reports grants from The Ohio State University, outside the submitted work. JL reports grants from The Ohio State University, during the conduct of the study. CFB reports personal fees from Shire. JRS, AG, and RS have no conflict of interest to declare.

Authors' Contributions

AD conceptualized and designed the study, designed the data collection instruments, supervised data collection, drafted the initial manuscript, and reviewed and revised the manuscript. JP conceptualized and designed the study, and reviewed and revised the manuscript. CFB conceptualized and designed the study, designed the data collection instruments, collected data, and reviewed and revised the manuscript. JL, AG, and RS designed the study, collected data, reviewed, and revised the manuscript. JRS designed the study, reviewed, and revised the manuscript.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Voxel Bay video experience.

[MP4 File (MP4 Video), 23MB - games_v7i1e10902_app1.mp4]

Multimedia Appendix 2

CONSORT-EHEALTH checklist (V 1.6.1).

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 82KB - games_v7i1e10902_app2.pdf]

References

1. Mahat G, Scoloveno MA, Cannella B. Comparison of children's fears of medical experiences across two cultures. J Pediatr Health Care 2004;18(6):302-307. [doi: 10.1016/S0891524504000884] [Medline: 15523421]
2. Kettwich SC, Sibbitt WL, Brandt JR, Johnson CR, Wong CS, Bankhurst AD. Needle phobia and stress-reducing medical devices in pediatric and adult chemotherapy patients. J Pediatr Oncol Nurs 2007;24(1):20-28. [doi: 10.1177/1043454206296023] [Medline: 17185398]
3. McMurtry CM, Pillai Riddell R, Taddio A, Racine N, Asmundson GJG, Noel M, HELPinKids&Adults Team. Far From "Just a Poke": Common Painful Needle Procedures and the Development of Needle Fear. Clin J Pain 2015 Oct;31(10 Suppl):S3-11 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1097/AJP.0000000000000272] [Medline: 26352920]

XSL•FO
RenderX

4. McMurtry C, Taddio A, Noel M, Antony M, Chambers C, Asmundson G, et al. Exposure-based Interventions for the management of individuals with high levels of needle fear across the lifespan: a clinical practice guideline and call for further research. Cogn Behav Ther 2016 Apr;45(3):217-235 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1080/16506073.2016.1157204] [Medline: 27007463]
5. Nir Y, Paz A, Sabo E, Potasman I. Fear of injections in young adults: prevalence and associations. Am J Trop Med Hyg 2003 Mar;68(3):341-344. [Medline: 12685642]
6. Waxman J, DiLorenzo M, Pillai Riddell RR, Flora D, Greenberg S, Garfield H. Preschool Needle Pain Responding: Establishing 'Normal'. J Pain 2017 Jun;18(6):739-745. [doi: 10.1016/j.jpain.2017.01.010] [Medline: 28196739]
7. Petrini P, Chambost H, Nemes L. Towards the goal of prophylaxis: experience and treatment strategies from Sweden, France and Hungary. Haemophilia 2004 Oct;10 Suppl 4:94-96. [doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2516.2004.00987.x] [Medline: 15479379]
8. Santavirta N, Björvell H, Solovieva S, Alaranta H, Hurskainen K, Konttinen Y. Coping strategies, pain, and disability in patients with hemophilia and related disorders. Arthritis Rheum 2001 Feb;45(1):48-55 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1002/1529-0131(200102)45:1<48::AID-ANR83>3.0.CO;2-1] [Medline: 11308061]
9. Uman LS, Birnie KA, Noel M, Parker JA, Chambers CT, McGrath PJ, et al. Psychological interventions for needle-related procedural pain and distress in children and adolescents. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2013 Oct 10(10):CD005179. [doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD005179.pub3] [Medline: 24108531]
10. Birnie KA, Noel M, Parker JA, Chambers CT, Uman LS, Kisely SR, et al. Systematic review and meta-analysis of distraction and hypnosis for needle-related pain and distress in children and adolescents. J Pediatr Psychol 2014 Sep;39(8):783-808 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1093/jpepsy/jsu029] [Medline: 24891439]
11. Depledge MH, Stone RJ, Bird WJ. Can natural and virtual environments be used to promote improved human health and wellbeing? Environ Sci Technol 2011 Jun 01;45(11):4660-4665. [doi: 10.1021/es103907m] [Medline: 21504154]
12. Faber AW, Patterson DR, Bremer M. Repeated use of immersive virtual reality therapy to control pain during wound dressing changes in pediatric and adult burn patients. J Burn Care Res 2013;34(5):563-568 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1097/BCR.0b013e3182777904] [Medline: 23970314]
13. Gold JI, Kim SH, Kant AJ, Joseph MH, Rizzo AS. Effectiveness of virtual reality for pediatric pain distraction during i.v. placement. Cyberpsychol Behav 2006 Apr;9(2):207-212. [doi: 10.1089/cpb.2006.9.207] [Medline: 16640481]
14. Hoffman HG, Meyer WJ, Ramirez M, Roberts L, Seibel EJ, Atzori B, et al. Feasibility of articulated arm mounted Oculus Rift Virtual Reality goggles for adjunctive pain control during occupational therapy in pediatric burn patients. Cyberpsychol Behav Soc Netw 2014 Jun;17(6):397-401 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1089/cyber.2014.0058] [Medline: 24892204]
15. Hoffman HG, Patterson DR, Carrougher GJ, Sharar SR. Effectiveness of virtual reality-based pain control with multiple treatments. Clin J Pain 2001 Sep;17(3):229-235. [Medline: 11587113]
16. Hoffman HG, Patterson DR, Magula J, Carrougher GJ, Zeltzer K, Dagadakis S, et al. Water-friendly virtual reality pain control during wound care. J Clin Psychol 2004 Feb;60(2):189-195. [doi: 10.1002/jclp.10244] [Medline: 14724926]
17. Hoffman HG, Patterson DR, Seibel E, Soltani M, Jewett-Leahy L, Sharar SR. Virtual reality pain control during burn wound debridement in the hydrotank. Clin J Pain 2008 May;24(4):299-304. [doi: 10.1097/AJP.0b013e318164d2cc] [Medline: 18427228]
18. Hoffman HG, Patterson DR, Soltani M, Teeley A, Miller W, Sharar SR. Virtual reality pain control during physical therapy range of motion exercises for a patient with multiple blunt force trauma injuries. Cyberpsychol Behav 2009 Feb;12(1):47-49. [doi: 10.1089/cpb.2008.0056] [Medline: 19018695]
19. Julious SA. Sample size of 12 per group rule of thumb for a pilot study. Pharmaceut Statist 2005 Oct;4(4):287-291. [doi: 10.1002/pst.185]
20. Kipping B, Rodger S, Miller K, Kimble RM. Virtual reality for acute pain reduction in adolescents undergoing burn wound care: a prospective randomized controlled trial. Burns 2012 Aug;38(5):650-657. [doi: 10.1016/j.burns.2011.11.010] [Medline: 22348801]
21. Koller D, Goldman RD. Distraction techniques for children undergoing procedures: a critical review of pediatric research. J Pediatr Nurs 2012 Dec;27(6):652-681. [doi: 10.1016/j.pedn.2011.08.001] [Medline: 21925588]
22. Li A, Montaño Z, Chen VJ, Gold JI. Virtual reality and pain management: current trends and future directions. Pain Manag 2011 Mar;1(2):147-157 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2217/pmt.10.15] [Medline: 21779307]
23. Maani CV, Hoffman HG, Morrow M, Maiers A, Gaylord K, McGhee LL, et al. Virtual reality pain control during burn wound debridement of combat-related burn injuries using robot-like arm mounted VR goggles. J Trauma 2011 Jul;71(1 Suppl):S125-S130 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1097/TA.0b013e31822192e2] [Medline: 21795888]
24. Malloy KM, Milling LS. The effectiveness of virtual reality distraction for pain reduction: a systematic review. Clin Psychol Rev 2010 Dec;30(8):1011-1018. [doi: 10.1016/j.cpr.2010.07.001] [Medline: 20691523]
25. Hawker GA, Mian S, Kendzerska T, French M. Measures of adult pain: Visual Analog Scale for Pain (VAS Pain), Numeric Rating Scale for Pain (NRS Pain), McGill Pain Questionnaire (MPQ), Short-Form McGill Pain Questionnaire (SF-MPQ), Chronic Pain Grade Scale (CPGS), Short Form-36 Bodily Pain Scale (SF-36 BPS), and Measure of Intermittent and Constant Osteoarthritis Pain (ICOAP). Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken) 2011 Nov;63 Suppl 11:S240-S252 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1002/acr.20543] [Medline: 22588748]

XSL•FO
RenderX

26. Revill SI, Robinson JO, Rosen M, Hogg MI. The reliability of a linear analogue for evaluating pain. Anaesthesia 1976 Nov;31(9):1191-1198 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 1015603]
27. Wewers ME, Lowe NK. A critical review of visual analogue scales in the measurement of clinical phenomena. Res Nurs Health 1990 Aug;13(4):227-236. [Medline: 2197679]
28. Palermo TM. Evidence-based interventions in pediatric psychology: progress over the decades. J Pediatr Psychol 2014 Sep;39(8):753-762 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1093/jpepsy/jsu048] [Medline: 24996921]

Abbreviations

HA: hemophilia A
HB: hemophilia B
HMD: head-mounted display
HTC: Hemophilia Treatment Center
IV: intravenous
SOC: standard of care
VAS: visual analog scale
VR: virtual reality

Edited by G Eysenbach; submitted 01.05.18; peer-reviewed by C Basch, CH Chan; comments to author 05.08.18; revised version received 25.09.18; accepted 25.09.18; published 09.01.19.

Please cite as:
Dunn A, Patterson J, Biega CF, Grishchenko A, Luna J, Stanek JR, Strouse R
A Novel Clinician-Orchestrated Virtual Reality Platform for Distraction During Pediatric Intravenous Procedures in Children With Hemophilia: Randomized Controlled Trial
JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e10902
URL: https://games.jmir.org/2019/1/e10902/
doi:10.2196/10902
PMID:30626567

©Amy Dunn, Jeremy Patterson, Charmaine F Biega, Alice Grishchenko, John Luna, Joseph R Stanek, Robert Strouse. Originally published in JMIR Serious Games (http://games.jmir.org), 09.01.2019. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR Serious Games, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://games.jmir.org, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Original Paper

Exploring Efficacy of a Serious Game (Tobbstop) for Smoking Cessation During Pregnancy: Randomized Controlled Trial

Francesc X Marin-Gomez[1,2,3,4], MD; Rocio Garcia-Moreno Marchán[5], MD; Anabel Mayos-Fernandez[5], MSN; Gemma Flores-Mateo[6,7], MD; Esther Granado-Font[6,8,9], SRA; Maria Luisa Barrera Uriarte[6,10], SRA; Jordi Duch[6,11], PhD; Cristina Rey-Reñones[6,8], PhD

[1]Servei d'Atenció Primària d'Osona, Gerència Territorial de la Catalunya Central, Institut Català de la Salut, Vic, Spain

[2]Unitat de Suport a la Recerca Catalunya Central, Institut Universitari d'Investigació en Atenció Primària Jordi Gol, Sant Fruitós de Bages, Spain

[3]Health Promotion in Rural Areas Research Group, Institut Català de la Salut, Sant Fruitós de Bages, Spain

[4]Digital Care Research Group, Universitat de Vic–Universitat Central de Catalunya, Centre for Health and Social Care Research, Vic, Spain

[5]Sexual and Reproductive Health Unit, Servei d'Atenció Primària d'Osona, Institut Català de la Salut, Vic, Spain

[6]Grup de Recerca en Tecnologies de la Informació en Atenció Primaria, Unitat de Suport a la Recerca Tarragona-Reus, Institut Universitari d'Investigació en Atenció Primària Jordi Gol, Reus, Spain

[7]Unitat d'Anàlisi i Qualitat, Xarxa Sanitària i Social Santa Tecla, Tarragona, Spain

[8]Departament d'Infermeria, Facultat d'Infermeria, Universitat Rovira i Virgili, Tarragona, Spain

[9]Centre d'Atenció Primària Horts de Miró (Reus-4), Gerència d'Àmbit d'Atenció Primària Camp de Tarragona, Institut Català de la Salut, Tarragona, Spain

[10]Centre d'Atenció Primària La Granja (Tarragona-2), Gerència d'Àmbit d'Atenció Primària Camp de Tarragona, Institut Català de la Salut, Torreforta, Tarragona, Spain

[11]Departament d'Enginyeria Informàtica i Matemàtiques, Universitat Rovira i Virgili, Tarragona, Spain

Corresponding Author:
Francesc X Marin-Gomez, MD
Servei d'Atenció Primària d'Osona
Gerència Territorial de la Catalunya Central
Institut Català de la Salut
Pl Divina Pastora N7
Vic, 08500
Spain
Phone: 34 938890222
Email: xavy.marin@gmail.com

Related Article:

This is a corrected version. See correction statement: https://games.jmir.org/2019/3/e14381/

Abstract

Background: Tobacco use during pregnancy entails a serious risk to the mother and harmful effects on the development of the child. Europe has the highest tobacco smoking prevalence (19.3%) compared with the 6.8% global mean. Between 20% to 30% of pregnant women used tobacco during pregnancy worldwide. These data emphasize the urgent need for community education and implementation of prevention strategies focused on the risks associated with tobacco use during pregnancy.

Objective: The aim of this study was to investigate the efficacy of an intervention that incorporates a serious game (Tobbstop) to help pregnant smokers quit smoking.

Methods: A two-arm randomized controlled trial enrolled 42 women who visited 2 primary care centers in Catalonia, Spain, between March 2015 and November 2016. All participants were pregnant smokers, above 18 years old, attending consultation with a midwife during the first trimester of pregnancy, and had expressed their desire to stop smoking. Participants were randomized to the intervention (n=21) or control group (n=21). The intervention group was instructed to install the game on their mobile phone or tablet and use it for 3 months. Until delivery, all the participants were assessed on their stage of smoking cessation

XSL•FO
RenderX

during their follow-up midwife consultations. The primary outcome was continuous tobacco abstinence until delivery confirmed by the amount of carbon monoxide at each visit, measured with a carboxymeter.

Results: Continuous abstinence until delivery outcome was 57% (12/21) in the intervention group versus 14% (3/21) in the control group (hazard ratio=4.31; 95% CI 1.87-9.97; *P*=.001). The mean of total days without smoking until delivery was higher in the intervention group (mean 139.75, SD 21.76) compared with the control group (mean 33.28, SD 13.27; *P*<.001). In addition, a Kapplan-Meier survival analysis showed that intervention group has a higher abstinence rate compared with the control group (log-rank test, χ^2_1=13.91; *P*<.001).

Conclusions: Serious game use is associated with an increased likelihood to maintain abstinence during the intervention period if compared with those not using the game. Pregnancy is an ideal opportunity to intervene and control tobacco use among future mothers. On the other hand, serious games are an emerging technology, growing in importance, which are shown to be a good tool to help quitting smoking during pregnancy and also to maintain this abstinent behavior. However, because of the study design limitations, these outcomes should be interpreted with caution. More research, using larger samples and longer follow-up periods, is needed to replicate the findings of this study.

Trial Registration: ClinicalTrials.gov NCT01734421; https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01734421 (Archived by WebCite at http://www.webcitation.org/75ISc59pB)

(JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e12835) doi:10.2196/12835

KEYWORDS

pregnancy; video games; smoking cessation

Introduction

Background

Mobile health (mHealth) is defined by the World Health Organization as "medical and public health practice supported by mobile devices, such as mobile phones, patient monitoring devices, personal digital assistants (PDAs), and other wireless devices." In 2017, the estimated number of available mHealth apps increased to approximately 325,000 [1]. Unfortunately, despite the fact that there is a large production of apps that aimed to improve health, we do not know scientifically the impact their use has on the user's health [2].

Preventive medicine is one of the aims of primary healthcare (PHC). The prevention of smoking habits is one of the most important preventive care practices undertaken in PHC. Smoking is claimed to have caused more than 1 trillion deaths only in the 21st century [3]. Tobacco use during pregnancy constitutes, in addition to a serious risk to the mother, harmful effects on the development of the child, making of pregnancy an ideal opportunity to intervene and control tobacco use among mothers and families.

In Spain, 28.3% of childbearing-aged women smoke on a daily basis. Research reveals that almost 24% of cessations occurred once pregnancy was confirmed [4]. In European countries, the proportion of women who smoke regularly or occasionally during different periods of pregnancy varies from 8.5% in Germany, 12.0% in England, 14.4% in Catalonia (Spain), and 17.1% in France [5]. Previous studies show a high percentage of relapses during postpartum [6,7], and it would seem that under this, low abstention could conceal problems related to the lack of knowledge and education about the harmful effects of smoking during pregnancy.

A systematic review and meta-analysis that included 77 clinical trials and about 29,000 women showed that the interventions carried out during pregnancy were effective in reducing tobacco consumption only when the advice was made in the consultations with other interventions [8]. Digital interventions, particularly those delivered by short message service (SMS) text message, or computer, can be effective for smoking cessation in pregnancy, and digital interventions containing behavior change techniques focused around goals setting, problem solving, and action planning could even be better [9]. Digital games have been evaluated for smoking cessation, and mobile apps are replacing money rewards for virtual goods to help players meet game objectives and incentivize bio-verified abstinence [10].

Anyone who has observed someone absorbed in a mobile device game might have seen that the use of these games provides a very powerful interaction. "For the player, time stops and self-consciousness disappears." Csikszentmihalyi describes this state as *flow* [11], and it could very well describe what happens when an individual gets involved in one of the interactive games that we can today download easily on our mobile.

Objectives

The advanced processing capabilities, global reach, and unmatched accessibility of smartphones render them ideal channels for delivering health-related interventions [12]. The complex functionalities enabled in the apps facilitate high user engagement, which is a strong predictor of smoking cessation [13].

Although there is a growing body of evaluated evidence on the efficacy and effectiveness of smartphone-based technologies for smoking cessation, this has not been studied enough in a very sensitive group such as pregnant women, and although most evaluative evidence consists of SMS text messaging–based interventions [14,15] and supporting follow-up apps [16], there is a lack of evidence in relation to serious games.

The best way to create an effective technique is to gain complete understanding of users' tastes and needs. This information will be key in the development of future mobile apps that respond

XSL•FO
RenderX

and are better adapted to user demands, [14]. This study evaluates the effectiveness of a serious game app (Tobbstop) [17] on pregnant women who want to quit smoking, as a way to help understanding user's trends.

Tobbstop Trial

The Tobbstop trial was a multicenter randomized clinical trial [18] carried out in Catalonia (Spain) that included the recruitment centers of this study. The general aim of the study was to assess the efficacy of a serious game app for smoking cessation. Smokers were recruited from primary health care centers and were randomized into 2 groups: (1) an intervention group that included access to the Tobbstop serious game and the usual counseling about smoking cessation and (2) a control group that received only the usual smoking cessation counseling. This study analyzed their impact in the subgroup of pregnant women participating.

Methods

Design

The trial was a prospective, randomized, 2-armed controlled pilot study conducted at 2 Sexual and Reproductive Health Units (SRHUs) at PHC centers in Catalonia from March 2015 to October 2016. Study participants were assigned to either an intervention group (n=21) or a control group (n=21) using a block randomization technique (eg, for 1 week, participants were randomized to the intervention group, and the following week, participants were randomized to the control group). Pregnant women in the intervention group started playing Tobbstop 1 week before the day chosen for cessation (D-day), and played until 90 days after D-day [18]. Before the day of cessation, degree of nicotine dependence was measured with the Fagerström test and the motivation to stop smoking was assessed by Richmond test. The testing protocol for the control subjects received standard of care and only differed in that they did not receive the Tobbstop app (use of the game), whereas the assessments remained the same for intervention and control group (Figure 1). The study was conceived as a pilot trial.

The protocol was in accordance with the Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials (CONSORT)-EHEALTH checklist and a CONSORT diagram of the proposed study design is shown (Figure 2). A complete description of the main study protocol was published elsewhere [18].

Participants

A total of 44 pregnant smokers were contacted for inclusion in the study. Finally, we included 42, which were allocated to either the intervention group or the control group. Inclusion criteria were as follows: (1) aged older than 18 years, (2) active smokers, (3) motivation to quit smoking ≥6 points on the Richmond test, and (4) have a mobile device with Android or iPhone operating system. Written informed consent was obtained from all women included in the study.

Follow-Up Visits

During follow-up visits with the midwife, the woman's health history was taken note of, and first tips on healthy habits and disease prevention were given as usual. Frequencies of visits throughout pregnancy depended on the individual needs of each woman and were based on their associated risk factors. Despite this, it is recommended that a minimum of 9 prenatal visits should be made for a woman with a normal pregnancy, with the following periodicity: before 10 weeks, at 11 to 13 weeks, 16 to 17 weeks, 20 to 21 weeks, 25 to 26 weeks, 29 to 30 weeks, 34 to 36 weeks, 38 to 40 weeks, and finally, at 41 weeks of gestation.

In our study, the same calendar of follow-up visits was used to monitor the study variables, but the use of Tobbstop was only proposed for the intervention group. In the recruitment visit, we collected data on tobacco consumption: (1) number of cigarettes smoked per day, (2) number of cigarettes smoked before pregnancy, (3) age of onset, and (4) number of previous attempts to quit and presence of smokers in the family environment.

The intervention group accessed Tobbstop from their smartphones and played from 7 days before their smoking cessation day (D-day) to 90 days after.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 1. Study design flowchart. CO: carbon monoxide.

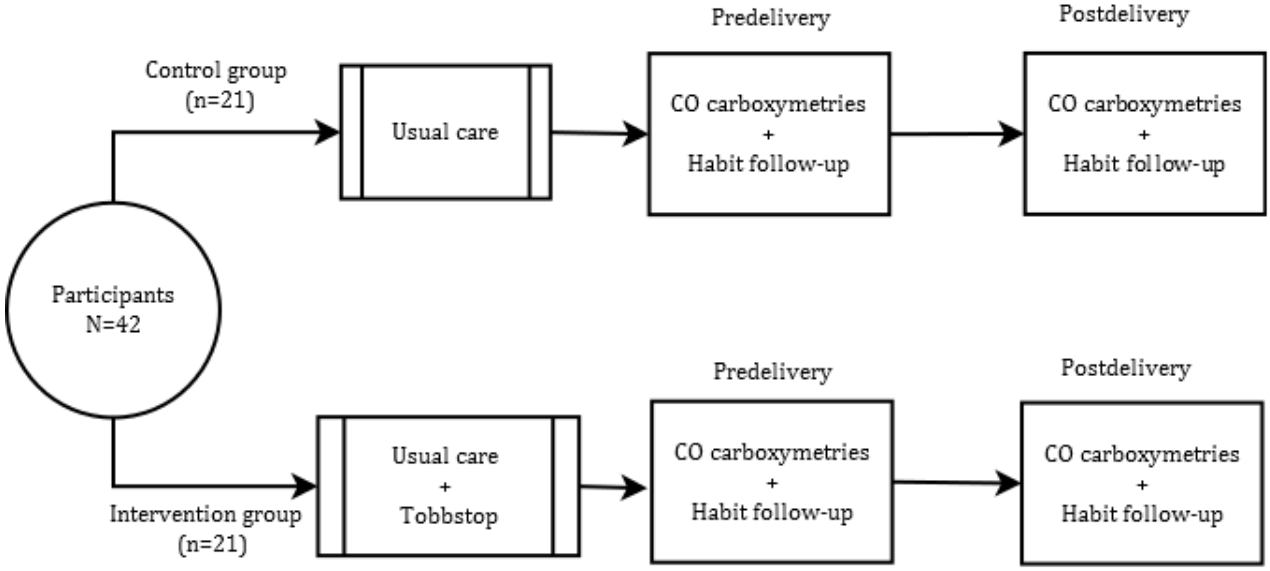
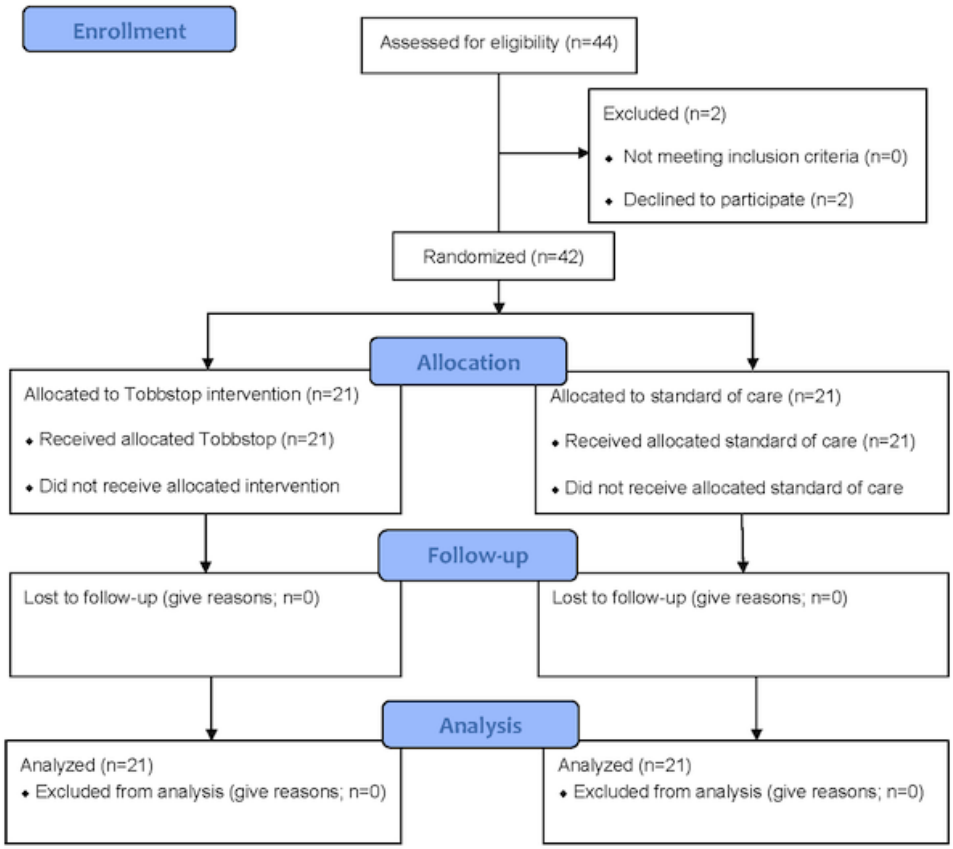


Figure 2. CONSORT flow diagram.



The Tobbstop App

A multidisciplinary team of health experts, pedagogues, computer engineers, graphic designers, and video game developers created Tobbstop, a mobile app dedicated to smoking cessation, in 2015 [19]. Its purpose was accompanying the process of quitting for the first 90 days, the most critical days for a possible relapse.

The app offers support during the different stages of the smoking cessation process, combining strategies of electronic health, gamification, and mobile learning. It represents the way forward when you stop smoking in the form of a video game. The game is played on an island that is initially polluted, dirty, and contaminated, a metaphor of a smoker's body, and it walks the player through the process of detoxification. The objective of the player is to clean and purify the island while improving it

XSL•FO
RenderX

(Figure 3). This is achieved by appropriately using the 4 available tools, which are: (1) access to data source of health education on snuff; (2) access to a social network that allows the player to communicate with other study participants, share experiences and concerns, and provide mutual support [19]; (3) a group of *minigames* designed to educate and try to eliminate the anxiety and withdrawal syndrome that generates the abstention of snuff; and (4) a messaging system to send queries to experts in smoking cessation.

Measures and Outcomes

The primary main outcome was continuous smoking abstinence at delivery validated by carbon monoxide (CO) concentration of at least 10 parts per million at each control test [20]. The carboxymetry was carried out by trained personnel. The secondary outcome was the total days of smoking abstinence during pregnancy.

The following variables were also collected: (1) start date of the detoxification (D-day) and weeks of gestation; (2) follow-up period, time elapsed between the date of beginning of the smoking cessation until the date of completion of the follow-up; and (3) date of completion of the follow-up, delivery date.

With these variables, primary outcomes were calculated: time interval between the start of smoking cessation until relapse or end of follow-up (delivery). The follow-up period was considered ended with the following: (1) the participant decided not to continue in the study and withdrew; (2) the patient lost contact, and we had no more information on them; and (3) the completion of the follow-up on delivery.

Ethical Considerations

Ethics approval for the study was obtained from the Ethics Committee for Clinical Research IDIAP Jordi Gol (P18/056). The information sheet to invite participants described the aim, procedures, security, and confidentiality of data and also informed about participants' rights to refuse participation. An informed consent was collected from all participants. The study observed the current laws at the time it was conducted.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 3. Screenshots of Tobbstop.

Statistical Analysis

A descriptive analysis was performed on the results, dividing the pregnant women into 2 groups: an intervention group and a control group.

At the beginning of the study, the comparability of the test and control groups was evaluated. The means and SDs of the quantitative variables were described if they had a normal distribution, and the qualitative variables were described with percentages and CIs. The quantitative variables were compared by their means and qualitative variables using the Pearson chi-square or Fisher exact tests to assess if their presence was significantly different between the 2 groups.

Survival analyses were carried out with Cox regression model and Kaplan-Meier method, considering as an event the fact of relapsing in the smoking habit, with treatment group (intervention or usual care) entered as the main effect. The 2 groups were compared using the log-rank test. All statistical analyses were performed using SPSS version 18.0 statistical software (IBM Corp) and were 2-sided with a level of significance of alpha=.05.

Results

Patient Flow

After exclusion, because of no interest in participation and language barriers (n=2), 42 pregnant smoking women were recruited, and participants were distributed to either the intervention group (n=21) or the control group (n=21; Figure 2).

XSL•FO
RenderX

Participant Characteristics

There were no significant differences in age, gender, premedication use, and previous cessation attempts between the 2 groups. The distribution of age and gender was the same across the 2 groups (Table 1).

Smoking Cessation

Abstinence on Delivery

The proportion of participants who remained without smoking until delivery was significantly higher in the intervention group (57.1%, 12/21) than that in the control group (14.3%, 3/21; hazard ratio=4.31; 95% CI 1.87-9.97; *P*=.001).

The Kaplan-Meier survival curve (Figure 4) shows that the intervention group has a higher abstinence rate compared with the control group.

The statistical contrast log-rank, with a value of 13.91 (*P*<.001), concludes that there are statistically significant differences in cumulative survival curves between both groups.

Total Days without Smoking

Mantel-Haenszel method analysis comparing means of total days without smoking until delivery showed a significant difference between the intervention group (mean 139.75, SD 21.76) and the control group (mean 33.28, SD 13.27; *P*<.001).

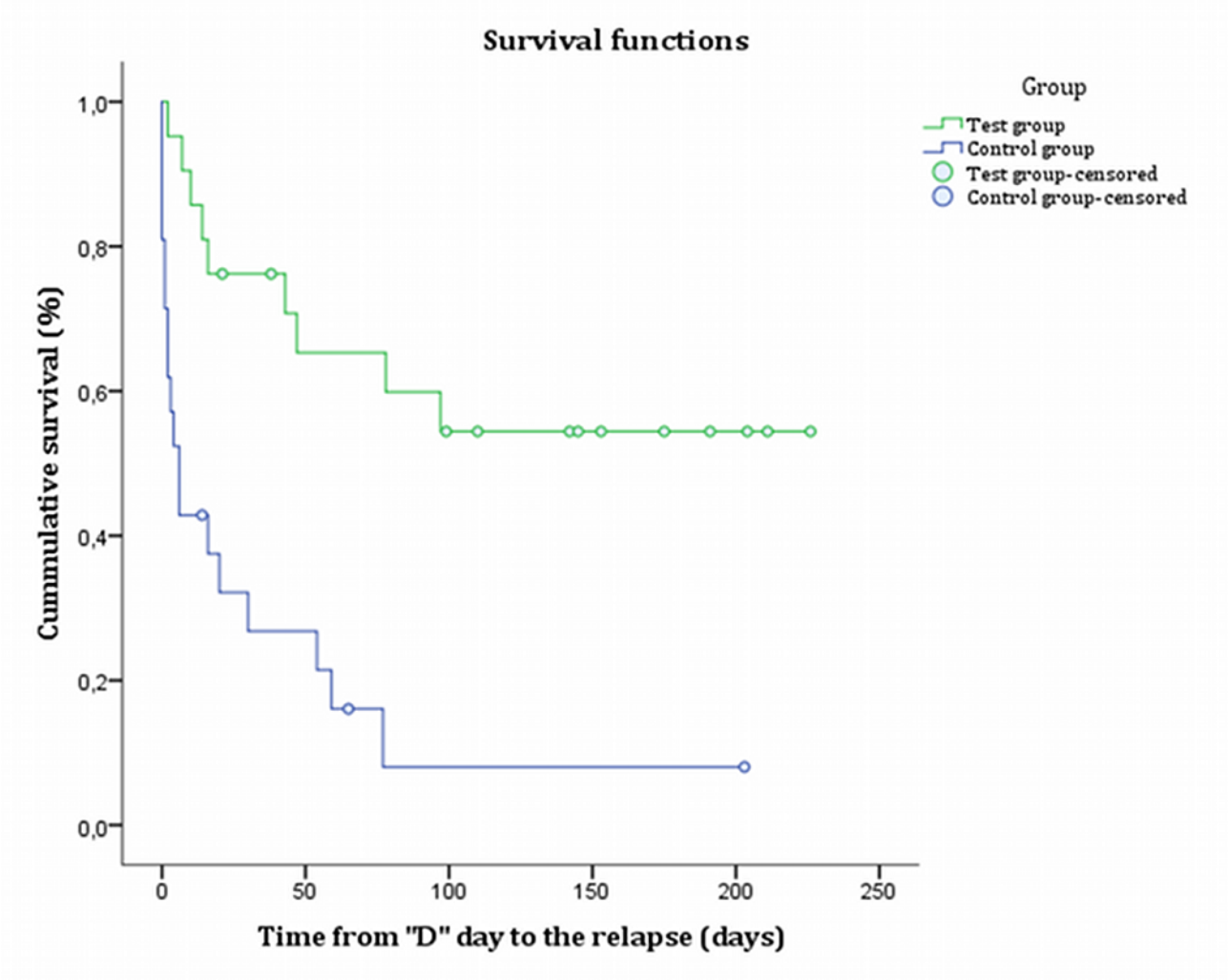
Table 1. Baseline study participant characteristics.

Characteristic	Control group, n=21[a]	Intervention group, n=21[a]	*P* value
Demographics			
Age (years), mean (SD)	30.43 (6.02)	31.67 (4.90)	.47
Body mass index, mean (SD)	23.09 (5.57)	23.77 (5.08)	.68
High school or less education, n (%)	14 (67)	16 (76)	.50
Smoking and quitting behavior			
Cessation attempts, mean (SD)	0.67 (0.66)	0.95 (1.16)	.33
Previous carboxymetries, mean (SD)	15.33 (7.91)	18.00 (7.04)	.26
Age at which they started smoking, mean (SD)	15.43 (1.69)	14.52 (4.08)	.35
Days from “D-day” to delivery, mean (SD)	138.81 (59.76)	152.33 (46.99)	.42
Smoking couple, n (%)	16 (76)	17 (81)	.70
Carbon monoxide at the beginning of study, mean (SD)	16.82 (11.19)	16.26 (8.65)	.87
Moderate-to-high dependence, n (%)	9 (42.9)	6 (28.6)	.33
Weekly cigarette consumption, mean (SD)			
Before pregnancy	20.60 (10.72)	19.12 (5.86)	.63
When pregnant	8.57 (6.32)	7.62 (3.54)	.55
Obstetric history			
Previous pregnancies, mean (SD)	1.24 (1.09)	1.00 (1.10)	.48
Pregnancy weeks, mean (SD)	37.57 (4.85)	38.52 (1.86)	.41
Frist trimester of pregnancy, n (%)	10 (48)	12 (57)	.54
Type of delivery, n (%)			
Eutocic	13 (62)	10 (48)	.35
Dystocic	2 (10)	3 (14)	.35
Caesarean	5 (24)	8 (38)	.50
Abortion	1 (5)	0	>.99

[a]One case excluded as it was lost to follow-up.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 4. Cumulative survival curve by groups (censored: subjects with no event of smoking during the observation time).



Discussion

Principal Findings

The findings of this pilot study suggest that the use of a mobile serious game may be an effective adjuvant intervention to contemporary management of smoking cessation in pregnant women. The results of this pilot trial showed that the intervention group had significantly higher continuous abstinence, validated by the CO carboxymeter, than the control group.

Despite other studies having shown that mobile apps are effective for quitting smoking, the Tobbstop app research on the effect of gamification as a new tool in smoking cessation has to be considered. Further research on how serious games could improve the overall satisfaction and helpfulness of these apps is needed before their implementation for medical use. More studies on serious games as Tobbstop would contribute to evaluate evidence-informed impact in smoker pregnant women willing to quit.

In addition, the reach that smoking cessation serious games, such as Tobbstop, can have, particularly for very sensitive populations such as pregnant women, supports the relevance and need for mHealth smoking cessation interventions. Smartphone ownership is nearing saturation among all population groups [10], especially in young and fertile women. As a result, health professionals need to consider the impact and the reach of these interventions as mHealth cessation interventions could potentially help to eliminate tobacco-related health disparities.

Given the potential for effective smoking cessation, serious games may warrant inclusion in the overall cessation picture for pregnant smoker's women. Furthermore, uses of a serious game for health and health behavior change are not numerous, and it is important that studies such as this are conducted, and findings, particularly if they support the effects of these tools, need to be published.

Limitations

There are several limitations and the most important are its sample size, its open character and the absence of usability data.

The study describes only the pregnant women participating in the trial [18] and no formal power calculation was undertaken for that sample. In other hand, pregnant women and health professionals know that they are involved in the intervention, which could create selection bias. And there is also a lack of metrics about the use or intensity of use that could be very interest to evaluate process outcomes.

XSL•FO
RenderX

The fact that the mobile app and the protocol are designed for a broader population and not specifically for pregnant smokers could obviate some specific and interesting aspect over the impact in pregnancy, so a compilation of the differences and suggestions observed should be analyzed for possible improvements in the future design according to this specific population. The lack of rewards and specific information in relation to quit smoking during pregnancy could have influenced the effective evaluation of the tool.

In addition, although the monitoring of participants with a normal follow-up gestation was guaranteed, there were some participant losses, for example, in pregnant women who abruptly ended their pregnancy or once labor had occurred at the time of follow-up. The motivations to attend the consultations once they deliver were reduced.

The study can also be limited because of the recent creation of the service in an SRHU environment that did not allow to estimate the success, types of pregnancy, and volume of participants in advance.

Comparison With Prior Work

App stores attract millions of users seeking apps for their smartphones. Google Play (previously known as Android Market) and Apple App Store are nowadays the most widely used. In 2012, a study published in the *American Journal of Preventive Medicine* examined the content of popular apps for smoking cessation for both, iPhone, with 252 apps, and Android operating systems, with 148 apps, and the results indicate that popular apps lacked many elements recommended for quitting smoking and needed a better integration with the clinical practice guidelines and other evidence-based practices [21]. In 2017, a careful review to identify the percentage of scientifically supported apps for smoking cessation available to consumers, found that only 11 out of 158 reviewed, met inclusion criteria [22].

Some studies designed specifically with apps for pregnant smokers [23,24] have reported promising results with digital smoking cessation interventions, but despite their systematic development and usability testing, engagement was low and did not appear to increase smoking abstinence during pregnancy [25]. A recent study seems to show that choice of an app for smoking cessation can be influenced by its immediate appearance and “social successes” [26]. Design features that improve motivation, autonomy, personal relevance, and credibility can be important for commitment, and serious games could be an additional tool to do so.

There are currently no published studies with quantitative results for gamified health apps of smoking cessation. Few smoking cessation interventions with serious games have been developed, and most of them have only been evaluated in a qualitative way [10,27-29] or as a future framework [30]; yet, ample room remains to improve the evidence of their real impact on cessation.

Some studies have analyzed the use of games to help pregnant women stop smoking as part of a main app of SMS text messages [31,32], but these apps consider these trivia games only as complementary support. Recent studies with games suggest that virtual reality seems to be an effective methodology to explore cessations in young adult smokers [33], but there is not enough evidence to conclude their usefulness, as most of the literature on health games does not specify its methodologies [34].

However, to our knowledge, no study has been published on the development or evaluation of serious smoking cessation games specifically for pregnant smokers.

The demonstration of the usefulness of serious games for health as a tool to stop smoking in pregnant women warns us about the need for more analytical and experimental research that uses more exhaustive methods to recruit participants, which will be essential to confirm and expand the results of this study.

Conclusions

In summary, the results of this pilot study introduce Tobbstop as a potentially effective and attractive adjunct therapy to existing interventions aimed at quitting tobacco use in pregnancy. Aligned with this, Tobbstop’s efficacy should be evaluated further in a bigger trial with more participants.

Acknowledgments

The authors appreciate the collaboration provided in the development of the study by the components of the Research Unit of Central Catalonia. The authors are especially thankful to Montse Sallent Servitja, who passed away in November 2017.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

CONSORT-EHEALTH checklist (V 1.6.1).

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 386KB - games_v7i1e12835_app1.pdf]

References

XSL•FO
RenderX

1. Pohl M. research2guidance. 2017 Nov 01. 325,000 mobile health apps available in 2017 – Android now the leading mHealth platform URL: https://research2guidance.com/325000-mobile-health-apps-available-in-2017/ [accessed 2018-03-14] [WebCite Cache ID 6xtegyn7i]
2. Bosak K, Park SH. Characteristics of adults seeking health care provider support facilitated by mobile technology: secondary data analysis. JMIR Hum Factors 2017 Dec 21;4(4):e33 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/humanfactors.8246] [Medline: 29269337]
3. Bloch M, Parascandola M. Tobacco use in pregnancy: a window of opportunity for prevention. Lancet Glob Health 2014 Sep;2(9):e489-e490 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/S2214-109X(14)70294-3] [Medline: 25304402]
4. Mateos-Vílchez PM, Aranda-Regules JM, Díaz-Alonso G, Mesa-Cruz P, Gil-Barcenilla B, Ramos-Monserrat M, et al. [Smoking prevalence and associated factors during pregnancy in Andalucía 2007-2012]. Rev Esp Salud Publica 2014 Jun;88(3):369-381 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.4321/S1135-57272014000300007] [Medline: 25028305]
5. Zeitlin J, Mohangoo A, Delnord M. Euro-Peristat. European Perinatal Health Report: the health and care of pregnant women and babies in Europe in 2010 URL: https://www.europeristat.com/images/European%20Perinatal%20Health%20Report_2010.pdf [accessed 2019-02-19] [WebCite Cache ID 76IEp5RcP]
6. Yasuda T, Ojima T, Nakamura M, Nagai A, Tanaka T, Kondo N, et al. Postpartum smoking relapse among women who quit during pregnancy: cross-sectional study in Japan. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 2013 Nov;39(11):1505-1512. [doi: 10.1111/jog.12098] [Medline: 23875711]
7. Agboola S, McNeill A, Coleman T, Leonardi BJ. A systematic review of the effectiveness of smoking relapse prevention interventions for abstinent smokers. Addiction 2010 Aug;105(8):1362-1380. [doi: 10.1111/j.1360-0443.2010.02996.x] [Medline: 20653619]
8. Chamberlain C, O'Mara-Eves A, Oliver S, Caird JR, Perlen SM, Eades SJ, et al. Psychosocial interventions for supporting women to stop smoking in pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2013 Oct 23(10):CD001055 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD001055.pub4] [Medline: 24154953]
9. Griffiths SE, Parsons J, Naughton F, Fulton EA, Tombor I, Brown KE. Are digital interventions for smoking cessation in pregnancy effective? A systematic review and meta-analysis. Health Psychol Rev 2018 Dec;12(4):333-356. [doi: 10.1080/17437199.2018.1488602] [Medline: 29912621]
10. Raiff BR, Fortugno N, Scherlis DR, Rapoza D. A mobile game to support smoking cessation: prototype assessment. JMIR Serious Games 2018 Jun 7;6(2):e11 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/games.9599] [Medline: 29880466]
11. Csikszentmihalyi M. Flow: The Psychology Of Optimal Experience. New York: Harper & Row; 1990.
12. Nasser FB, Trevena L. There's an app for that: a guide for healthcare practitioners and researchers on smartphone technology. Online J Public Health Inform 2015;7(2):e218 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.5210/ojphi.v7i2.5522] [Medline: 26392848]
13. Bricker JB, Mull KE, Kientz JA, Vilardaga R, Mercer LD, Akioka KJ, et al. Randomized, controlled pilot trial of a smartphone app for smoking cessation using acceptance and commitment therapy. Drug Alcohol Depend 2014 Oct 1;143:87-94. [doi: 10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2014.07.006] [Medline: 25085225]
14. Whittaker R, McRobbie H, Bullen C, Rodgers A, Gu Y. Mobile phone-based interventions for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2016;4:CD006611. [doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD006611.pub4] [Medline: 27060875]
15. Ghorai K, Akter S, Khatun F, Ray P. mHealth for smoking cessation programs: a systematic review. J Pers Med 2014;4(3):412-423 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.3390/jpm4030412] [Medline: 25563359]
16. Baskerville NB, Struik LL, Hammond D, Guindon GE, Norman CD, Whittaker R, et al. Effect of a mobile phone intervention on quitting smoking in a young adult population of smokers: randomized controlled trial study protocol. JMIR Res Protoc 2015 Jan 19;4(1):e10 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/resprot.3823] [Medline: 25599695]
17. Marin-Gomez FX, Garcia-Moreno R, Mayos-Fernandez A, Rey-Reñones C. Exploring efficacy of a serious game (TOBBSTOP) for smoking cessation in pregnant women: pilot case-control study. iproc 2018 Sep 17;4(2):e11878. [doi: 10.2196/iproc.11878]
18. Valdivieso-López E, Flores-Mateo G, Molina-Gómez JD, Rey-Reñones C, Barrera Uriarte ML, Duch J, et al. Efficacy of a mobile application for smoking cessation in young people: study protocol for a clustered, randomized trial. BMC Public Health 2013 Aug 1;13:704 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1186/1471-2458-13-704] [Medline: 23915067]
19. Granado-Font E, Ferré-Grau C, Rey-Reñones C, Pons-Vigués M, Pujol Ribera E, Berenguera A, et al. Coping strategies and social support in a mobile phone chat app designed to support smoking cessation: qualitative analysis. JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2018 Dec 20;6(12):e11071 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/11071] [Medline: 30573445]
20. Burling TA, Bigelow GE, Robinson JC, Mead AM. Smoking during pregnancy: reduction via objective assessment and directive advice. Behavior Therapy 1991;22(1):31-40. [doi: 10.1016/S0005-7894(05)80241-2]
21. Abroms LC, Lee WJ, Bontemps-Jones J, Ramani R, Mellerson J. A content analysis of popular smartphone apps for smoking cessation. Am J Prev Med 2013 Dec;45(6):732-736 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/j.amepre.2013.07.008] [Medline: 24237915]
22. Haskins BL, Lesperance D, Gibbons P, Boudreaux ED. A systematic review of smartphone applications for smoking cessation. Transl Behav Med 2017 Jun;7(2):292-299 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1007/s13142-017-0492-2] [Medline: 28527027]

XSL•FO
RenderX

23. Tombor I, Shahab L, Brown J, Crane D, Michie S, West R. Development of SmokeFree Baby: a smoking cessation smartphone app for pregnant smokers. Transl Behav Med 2016 Dec;6(4):533-545 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1007/s13142-016-0438-0] [Medline: 27699682]
24. Iacoviello BM, Steinerman JR, Klein DB, Silver TL, Berger AG, Luo SX, et al. Clickotine, a personalized smartphone app for smoking cessation: initial evaluation. JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2017 Apr 25;5(4):e56 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/mhealth.7226] [Medline: 28442453]
25. Tombor I, Beard E, Brown J, Shahab L, Michie S, West R. Randomized factorial experiment of components of the SmokeFree Baby smartphone application to aid smoking cessation in pregnancy. Transl Behav Med 2018 Jul 16. [doi: 10.1093/tbm/iby073] [Medline: 30011020]
26. Perski O, Blandford A, Ubhi HK, West R, Michie S. Smokers' and drinkers' choice of smartphone applications and expectations of engagement: a think aloud and interview study. BMC Med Inform Decis Mak 2017 Dec 28;17(1):25 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1186/s12911-017-0422-8] [Medline: 28241759]
27. Bindoff I, de Salas K, Peterson G, Ling T, Lewis I, Wells L, et al. Quittr: the design of a video game to support smoking cessation. JMIR Serious Games 2016 Dec 1;4(2):e19 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/games.6258] [Medline: 27908844]
28. DeLaughter KL, Sadasivam RS, Kamberi A, English TM, Seward GL, Chan SW, et al. Crave-Oout: a distraction/motivation mobile game to assist in smoking cessation. JMIR Serious Games 2016 May 26;4(1):e3 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/games.4566] [Medline: 27229772]
29. El-Hilly AA, Iqbal SS, Ahmed M, Sherwani Y, Muntasir M, Siddiqui S, et al. Game on? Smoking cessation through the gamification of mHealth: a longitudinal qualitative study. JMIR Serious Games 2016 Oct 24;4(2):e18 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/games.5678] [Medline: 27777216]
30. Edwards EA, Caton H, Lumsden J, Rivas C, Steed L, Pirunsarn Y, et al. Creating a theoretically grounded, gamified health app: lessons from developing the Cigbreak smoking cessation mobile phone game. JMIR Serious Games 2018 Nov 29;6(4):e10252 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/10252] [Medline: 30497994]
31. Abroms LC, Johnson PR, Heminger CL, van Alstyne JM, Leavitt LE, Schindler-Ruwisch JM, et al. Quit4baby: results from a pilot test of a mobile smoking cessation program for pregnant women. JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2015;3(1):e10 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/mhealth.3846] [Medline: 25650765]
32. Li Q, Iqbal A, Perc M, Chen M, Abbott D. Coevolution of quantum and classical strategies on evolving random networks. PLoS One 2013;8(7):e68423 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0068423] [Medline: 23874622]
33. Traylor AC, Bordnick PS, Carter BL. Using virtual reality to assess young adult smokers' attention to cues. Cyberpsychol Behav 2009 Aug;12(4):373-378 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1089/cpb.2009.0070] [Medline: 19630582]
34. Brox E, Fernandez-Luque L, Tøllefsen T. Healthy gaming - video game design to promote health. Appl Clin Inform 2011;2(2):128-142 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.4338/ACI-2010-10-R-0060] [Medline: 23616865]

Abbreviations

CO: carbon monoxide
CONSORT: Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials
mHealth: mobile health
SMS: short message service
SRHU: sexual and reproductive health unit

Edited by G Eysenbach; submitted 15.11.18; peer-reviewed by F López Seguí, À Salvador Verges; comments to author 26.12.18; revised version received 07.01.19; accepted 20.01.19; published 27.03.19.

Please cite as:
Marin-Gomez FX, Garcia-Moreno Marchán R, Mayos-Fernandez A, Flores-Mateo G, Granado-Font E, Barrera Uriarte ML, Duch J, Rey-Reñones C
Exploring Efficacy of a Serious Game (Tobbstop) for Smoking Cessation During Pregnancy: Randomized Controlled Trial
JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e12835
URL: http://games.jmir.org/2019/1/e12835/
doi:10.2196/12835
PMID:30916655

©Francesc X Marin-Gomez, Rocio Garcia-Moreno Marchán, Anabel Mayos-Fernandez, Gemma Flores-Mateo, Esther Granado-Font, Maria Luisa Barrera Uriarte, Jordi Duch, Cristina Rey-Reñones. Originally published in JMIR Serious Games (http://games.jmir.org), 27.03.2019. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any

XSL•FO
RenderX

medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR Serious Games, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://games.jmir.org, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Original Paper

Young People's Knowledge of Antibiotics and Vaccinations and Increasing This Knowledge Through Gaming: Mixed-Methods Study Using e-Bug

Charlotte Victoria Eley[1], MSc, BSc (Hons); Vicki Louise Young[1], BSc (Hons), PhD; Catherine Victoria Hayes[1], BSc (Hons); Neville Q Verlander[2], MSc; Cliodna Ann Miriam McNulty[1], MBBS (Hons), MD, FRCPath, DSc (Tech)

[1]Primary Care Unit, Public Health England, Gloucester, United Kingdom

[2]Statistics Unit, Public Health England, London, United Kingdom

Corresponding Author:
Charlotte Victoria Eley, MSc, BSc (Hons)
Primary Care Unit
Public Health England
Microbiology Department
Gloucester Royal Hospital
Gloucester, GL1 3NN
United Kingdom
Phone: 44 02084953253
Email: charlotte.eley@phe.gov.uk

Abstract

Background: e-Bug, led by Public Health England, educates young people about important topics: microbes, infection prevention, and antibiotics. Body Busters and Stop the Spread are 2 new e-Bug educational games.

Objective: This study aimed to determine students' baseline knowledge, views on the games, and knowledge improvement.

Methods: Students in 5 UK educational provisions were observed playing 2 e-Bug games. Before and after knowledge and evaluation questionnaires were completed, and student focus groups were conducted.

Results: A total of 123 junior and 350 senior students completed the questionnaires. Vaccination baseline knowledge was high. Knowledge increased significantly about antibiotic use, appropriate sneezing behaviors, and vaccinations. In total, 26 student focus groups were conducted. Body Busters was *engaging* and *enjoyable*, whereas Stop the Spread was *fast-paced* and *challenging* but increased vaccination and health behavior intentions.

Conclusions: e-Bug games are an effective learning tool for students to enhance knowledge about microbes, infection prevention, and antibiotics. Game-suggested improvements should help increase enjoyment.

(JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e10915) doi:10.2196/10915

KEYWORDS

education; children; knowledge; antibiotics; vaccines

Introduction

Educating children and young people is important in the fight against antibiotic resistance. Through education, we can raise awareness, enhance knowledge, and modify behavioral intentions about hygiene and antibiotic use in our future generation of antibiotic users. E-Bug, led by Public Health England (PHE), is an international health education resource that teaches children and young people about hygiene, the spread of infections, antibiotic use, and resistance. e-Bug includes Web-based lesson plans and activities for educators and educational games for students hosted on the e-Bug website. Evaluation of e-Bug activities to be undertaken in schools and science shows has been well-documented [1-6], and the National Institute of Clinical Excellence [7] has suggested that schools may use the evidence-based e-Bug resources to educate children and young people in an age-appropriate way about hygiene, prevention of infections, and antibiotic use.

Google Analytics has been used to monitor Web traffic to the e-Bug website since 2010 [2]. The e-Bug website had 94,675 visitors from September 1, 2016, to August 31, 2017, and 100,955 visitors in the previous academic year. The e-Bug

XSL•FO
RenderX

games' home page was the second highest visited page with 28,610 page views from September 1, 2016, to August 31, 2017; the senior students games' home page had 10,154 views during the same period.

The internet is a suitable tool for health promotion, and internet-based health interventions have been shown to change health behaviors. *Gamification*, where features of gaming are used in other disciplines, has become increasingly popular in recent years, aiming to make science and health education more available and exciting to the general public. *Serious games* are those games where the primary focus is not entertainment but education and learning [8]. A meta-analysis of serious games in regard to their effect on cognitive processes and motivation found the games to positively affect cognitive processes, including learning and retention compared with traditional educational methods, with no difference to motivation [9].

Evidence suggests that gamification and serious games for health and well-being are most effective when targeting health-related behaviors [10]. For instance, positive associations between gamification, serious games, and school-aged knowledge and behavior have been reported in public health topics such as asthma [11], fruit and vegetable consumption [12], and oral hygiene [13,14].

The e-Bug Web-based educational games [15] have been previously evaluated including a study that evaluated 3 e-Bug games using a mixed-methods approach; the 3 e-Bug games showed an improvement in knowledge and focused on the use of antibiotics for bacterial versus viral infections and ensured that the course of antibiotics is completed [16].

The aim of this study was to evaluate the 2 e-Bug educational games: Body Busters, previously evaluated by Hale et al and then modified with new content [16], and Stop the Spread, a new educational game launched in 2016. The questions of the research study are as follows:

- What is students' baseline knowledge about the game-learning outcomes?
- What is students' change in knowledge following the games?
- What are students' views on the games to suggest improvements?

Figure 1 details the style of play and learning outcomes of the 2 games. Both e-Bug games are responsive on all devices including computers and tablets. Pilot game testing was conducted at 3 schools before the game launch to ensure the games worked correctly and the instructions were clear.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 1. The style of play and learning outcomes of Body Busters and Stop the Spread.

Game	Style of game	Learning outcomes
Body Busters	Pac-man style game in which users need to collect all the antibiotics to kill the bacteria. Useful bacteria give the users extra lives, but these bacteria are also killed by the antibiotics. Harder levels now also include viruses, which are not killed by the antibiotics.	• There are different types of microbes (bacteria and viruses) • Bacteria can be harmful or useful • Antibiotics kill useful and harmful bacteria but do not kill viruses
Stop the Spread	Users prevent the spread of infection in a school by catching sneezes (red circles) with a tissue and throwing the used tissue into a bin. As sneezes go uncaught, more children in the playground become infected (green circles). The game is over once every child in the playground is infected. The longer the game lasts, the more points the user scores. An additional level includes the concept of vaccination and herd immunity. In this level users vaccinate children in the playground as quickly as they can to slow the spread of infection.	• Infections spread by sneezing • Catch sneezes in a tissue • Put used tissues in the bin • Using tissues stops the spread of infections • Vaccinations can help prevent the spread of infection

XSL•FO
RenderX

Methods

Research Design

The study was a mixed-method evaluation using quantitative and qualitative methods. Quantitative methods included before and after students' knowledge questionnaires; qualitative methods included students' focus groups and open-ended questions and responses from the students' postgaming evaluation questionnaire.

Sampling and Recruitment

Educational providers, including schools and summer schools, were invited to take part in the study through convenience recruitment of educators at educational and scientific conferences and then through snowball sampling. Sampling aimed to ensure a representation of school-aged children across 3 local authorities in the United Kingdom, including rural and urban schools, different socioeconomics, and selective grammar and nonselective state schools (see Table 1). Local authorities were Gloucestershire, Buckinghamshire, and South Wales.

Ethics

All researchers who observed the sessions had a Disclosure Barring Check, through PHE, to work with children. This study did not require National Research Ethics Service approval as it was outside the National Health Service and was classed as a service evaluation. PHE provided written confirmation approving the service evaluation in July 2016. Educational providers gave informed written consent before the study took place; students were involved and their parents were given the option for students to opt out at any point during data collection. Teachers reported that no students opted out of the research. Consent was deemed accepted if the participants completed the before and after knowledge questionnaires. Questionnaires were collected in line with the Data Protection Act 1998 and Caldicott 1999 regulations on handling and distributing sensitive participant information. Focus group participants provided verbal informed consent for participation in the study, audio recording, and the publishing of anonymized quotes.

Data Collection and Analysis

Data collection took place between August 2016 and July 2017.

Quantitative Data

Before and after knowledge questionnaires were used to evaluate whether playing the e-Bug games had made any change to students' knowledge. Questionnaires were based on previously validated questionnaires used to evaluate the e-Bug games and activities [2,3,16]; 4 additional questions (1, 2, 3, and 5) were included in the questionnaire to cover additional learning outcomes that could be indirectly improved through game play and are hereby referred to as *general questions* (see Multimedia Appendix 1 for questionnaires).

Data collection consisted of (1) students completed pregame-play questionnaire 1 alone without consultation, (2) students played on Body Busters for 5 min, (3) students played on Stop the Spread for 5 min, and (4) students completed postgame-play questionnaire 2 alone without consultation, which also included some additional open-ended evaluation questions. The game play was for 5 min to follow the methodology of previous evaluations [16], and as 5 min is the estimated amount of time it takes to play 1 round of the games from testing, it allowed the study to measure knowledge change after single game play rather than repeated game play.

A researcher was present in each session to monitor and observe game play and hand out and collect questionnaires from the students. Data collection occurred in a convenient room where students had their own computer. The rationale for that was to model how the games might be played in a real-life teaching situation. Figure 2 provides further details on the data collection process.

McNemar test was used for each response from the multiple-choice question to determine the significance of the difference in the proportion of correct answers before and after game playing. Moreover, 95% CIs of the odds ratio were estimated to determine the odds of students answering correctly. Analysis was performed separately for junior and senior school-aged pupils, as knowledge change could differ between age groups. All statistical analysis was completed in STATA, version 14.2.

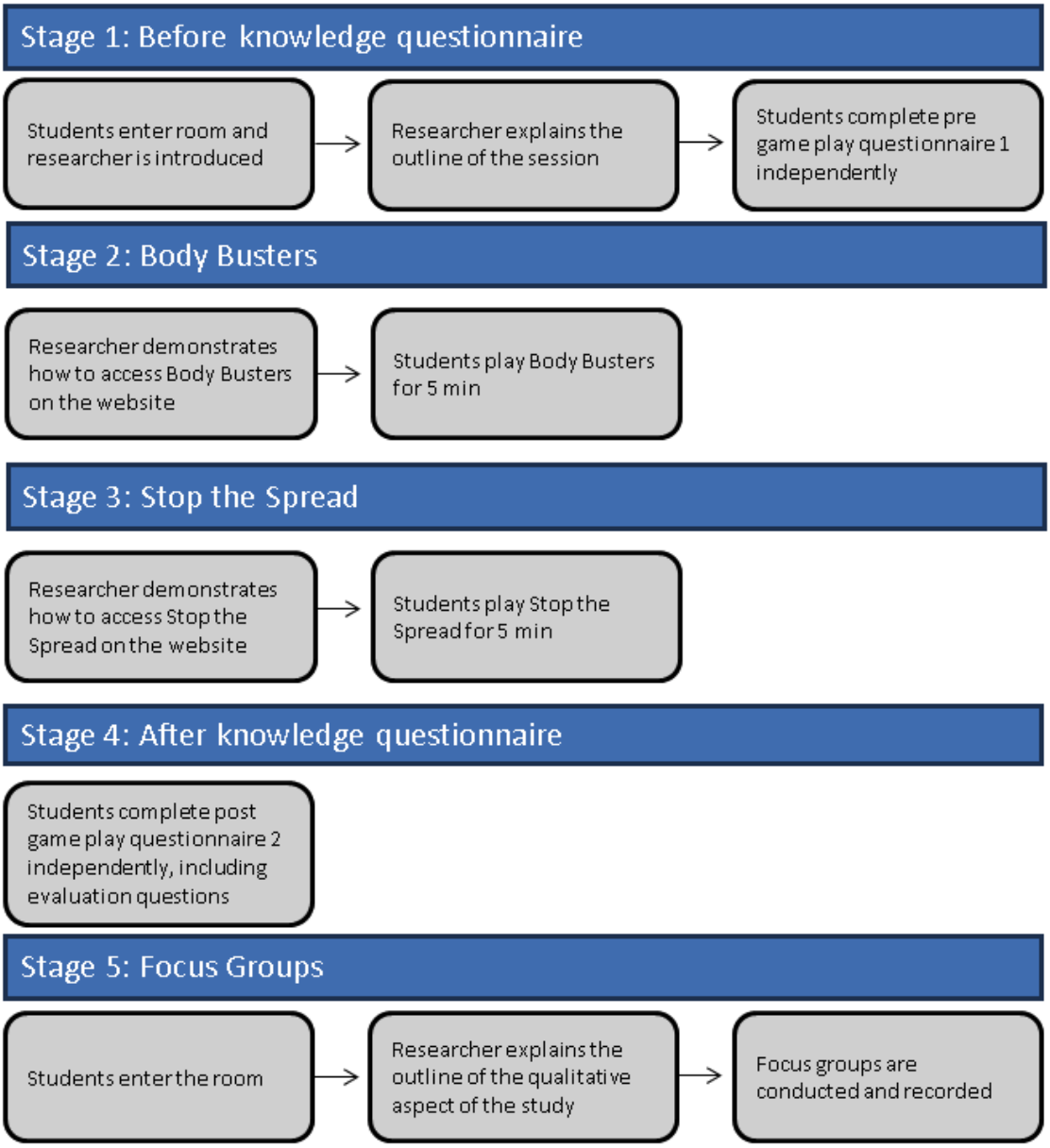
The postgame-play questionnaire 2 included an additional 7 questions on game enjoyment, including 2 Likert scale questions (students circled a number scale of 1-10) and 5 open-ended questions. Likert scale responses were inputted into MS Excel, and mean enjoyment scores for each game were calculated for junior, senior, and all students.

Table 1. Demographics of educational providers.

Educational provider	Local authority	Type of education	Questionnaires (N=473), n (%)	Focus groups (N=26), n (%)	Students (N=126), n (%)
A	Gloucestershire	Summer school	61 (13)	14 (54)	61 (48)
B	Gloucestershire	Grammar	29 (6)	1 (4)	6 (5)
C	South Wales	State	100 (21)	4 (15)	24 (19)
D	Bedfordshire	State	183 (39)	4 (15)	20 (16)
E	Bedfordshire	Grammar	100 (21)	3 (12)	15 (12)

XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 2. e-Bug game play and data collection process.



Qualitative Data

In total, 5 open-ended questions on enjoyment were included in the postgame-play questionnaire 2 to provide deeper qualitative data from all students.

Semistructured focus groups were facilitated immediately after the game intervention by VLY, CVH, and CVE who are all trained qualitative researchers for the e-Bug project, PHE. All 26 focus groups took place in person in a convenient room at the educational establishment. Focus groups of size 4 to 6 students, chosen by the class teacher and represented a mix of student abilities, lasted for 6 to 20 min depending on participant age. Focus groups were audio recorded, transcribed verbatim, and checked for accuracy by CVH or CVE. Furthermore, 26 focus groups were planned with all 5 schools participating; no new themes emerged from the later focus groups, and researchers agreed that data saturation had been reached.

The topic guide for the focus groups was based on previous e-Bug evaluation topic guides for e-Bug and included additional questions on Stop the Spread learning outcomes. The schedule was piloted during the e-Bug game development in 3 testing sessions in schools in March 2016.

All focus group data and open-ended responses on enjoyment were inputted into NVivo 10 (QSR International) qualitative analysis software. NVivo 10 was used to organize, code, and analyze the focus group transcripts by CVH and open-ended evaluation responses by CVE. A subset of focus group data (2 junior and 2 senior transcripts) was analyzed by a second researcher (CVE) to ensure reliability. Both researchers discussed the data and coding to agree on the emerging themes before developing a thematic framework. Any discrepancies between researchers were resolved through discussion until an agreement was reached. The thematic framework was discussed by the research team.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Results

Main Findings

The study recruited 473 students (123 junior and 350 senior students) aged 7 to 16 years from 5 educational providers across 3 local authorities in the United Kingdom (illustrated in Table 1).

Before and after knowledge questionnaires were completed by 473 students. Baseline knowledge about vaccinations was high in junior students (>60% correct responses) and was higher in senior students (>80% correct responses), except for 1 question for which the baseline knowledge 55%. Baseline knowledge about antibiotics was low in junior and senior students (<40% and <67% correct responses, respectively). Senior students had greater pregaming knowledge than junior students in 11 out of the 12 questions and had greater postgaming knowledge in 10 out of the 12 questions. However, knowledge change was greater in 9 out of the 12 questions for junior students.

Quantitative results showed significant improvements in knowledge ($P<.05$) about antibiotic use, appropriate sneezing behaviors, and vaccinations for both age groups: junior (7-11 years) and senior (11-16 years).

In total, 26 student focus groups with 126 students were conducted, 10 junior (7-11 years) and 16 senior (11-16 years) with approximately 4 to 6 students per focus group. Researchers observed that students enjoyed playing Body Busters more, and they were keen to answer questions to gain more lives, whereas Stop the Spread was more difficult and on occasion required some researcher explanation. The mean enjoyment score for Body Busters was 8.4/10 for juniors and 7.2/10 for seniors; the mean enjoyment score for Stop the Spread was 6.2/10 for juniors and 5.1/10 for seniors (illustrated in Table 2).

Qualitative Data

Reported Views of Body Busters Game

Body Busters Positive Perceptions: User Experience

Qualitative results from focus groups and open questionnaire responses for Body Busters were overall very positive with a few suggestions for improvement. Many students of both age groups reported positive perceptions of user experience; at least 1 participant in each focus group reported positive levels of enjoyment and nearly all other participants agreed. Many students wanted to play for longer as the game was very engaging, similar to Pac-Man, at the correct level of difficulty, and students reported that they had learned through the gaming experience:

> *I could be on there [Body Busters] for like the whole day or an hour, or actually 2 hours.* [Junior student, Focus group 9]
>
> *I feel like it was teaching us that antibiotics are to be used to kill a bacterial infection, but also that not all bacteria is harmful to the body.* [Senior student, Focus group 5]
>
> *I enjoyed the game play - collecting antibiotics and dodging the bad bacteria. The actual game was fun.* [Senior student questionnaire response]
>
> *I realised not all microbes are harmful.* [Senior student questionnaire response]

Body Busters Positive Perceptions: Game Functions

Many students of both age groups reported positive perceptions of the game functions, including game recovery aids, the pace of the game, and the game aesthetics. Some junior students also reported that they liked the microbe characters and the concept of being able to gain more lives. Some senior students also reported that they liked the different levels of the game and the useful pictorial instructions:

> *I liked getting more lives from the good bacteria and I liked collecting the antibiotics.* [Junior student, Focus group 17]
>
> *It was quite like, there was an equation, so the robot plus the circle equals health up, and that was quite a good way of formatting it without writing it out as paragraphs.* [Senior student, Focus group 15]
>
> *The game had good bacteria so you could regain your lives.* [Senior student questionnaire response]

Body Busters Negative Perceptions

A common negative theme for Body Busters was the slower pace of the game when users lost a life, reported by many junior and senior students:

> *I was cornered by two enemies and lost lots of lives-then I was really slow for the rest of the game. Becoming slow made it much less enjoyable.* [Senior student questionnaire response]

Some students suggested ways to modify this aspect of the game, including when the user loses a life, do not slow the avatar down but instead increase the speed or size of the harmful bacteria and viruses. Other students reported that the instructions could be improved by keeping the pictorial instructions but adding written instructions for clarity, and a few students suggested having a visible key for the different microbes in the game play:

> *Maybe...if you lose your health maybe there's like a circle around the bacteria so that their like range gets bigger, but you're still the same speed, or they get bigger themselves and you just increase the size of the map so two of them can go.* [Senior student, Focus group 15]
>
> *I think you should make it not go so slow and I think when you press start it should like count 1, 2, 3 go, so then you actually know where you are and you know where everything else is, you can just go off.* [Junior students, Focus group 17]

XSL•FO
RenderX

Table 2. Enjoyment scores for the e-Bug games (score out of 10).

Students	Body Busters	Stop the Spread
Junior	8.4	6.2
Senior	7.2	5.1
All students	7.6	5.5

Reported Views of Stop the Spread Game

Stop the Spread Positive Perceptions: User Experience

Some students in both age groups reported positive perceptions of user experience, including reporting an increase in knowledge about the spread of infection and the importance of vaccinations:

> *Vaccinations protect other people, so if you have a vaccination then you won't get any colds and stuff, and then you're protecting other people because you can't pass anything on to them.* [Junior student, Focus group 16]
>
> *I think it teaches you that if you know you have a cold before you go to school...you have a tissue and you make sure you sneeze into the tissue and put it in the bin, so it's safe, or if it's too bad,...you might want to stay away as you'll infect loads of people and make it even worse.* [Senior student, Focus group 21]
>
> *The learning points -very obvious how severely something can spread.* [Senior student questionnaire response]

In most junior focus groups, at least 1 student voiced an increase in understanding appropriate health behaviors, especially about sneezing, and most participants concurred with them. In some focus groups, students reported intent to change health behaviors:

> *It was teaching us that you should always use a tissue and put that in the bin.* [Junior student, Focus group 16]
>
> *It shows you what to not do, like if you feel like you're going to sneeze and cough, do it into a tissue.* [Junior student, Focus group 17]
>
> *That we need to sneeze into a tissue not just sneeze out...Put it in the bin, don't keep it in your coat pocket like I used to do.* [Junior student, Focus group 19]

Stop the Spread Positive Perceptions: Game Functions

Some students, junior and senior, enjoyed the fast pace of the game and different levels of difficulty, especially the vaccination levels. A few senior students reported on the game aesthetics: the look, appearance, and style of the game:

> *I liked how you could like vaccinate them, and everyone was dying, it kept on going then you had to get it really really quickly before anyone else got the illness to spread.* [Junior student, Focus group 11]
>
> *For me the vaccinations was one of the highlights that you had these certain people that were immune so you could just concentrate on one certain area where the clump of uninjected people were* [Senior student, Focus group 15]
>
> *I enjoyed the colours, so when it showed you they were red and then purple, that was helpful.* [Senior student, Focus group 22]
>
> *You could protect people by injecting them.* [Senior student questionnaire response]

Stop the Spread Negative Perceptions

A common negative theme of Stop the Spread was that the game was too difficult. In most focus groups, the majority of students felt the game was "too hard" because it was "too fast" and "too many children were sneezing at the same time." Many students reported a lack of engagement to continue to play the game as they had negative emotions, such as feeling "stressed" and "annoyed":

> *Oh gosh level 1 was fine, but as the levels went on I was like oh gosh how are we meant to do this now.* [Junior student, Focus group 12]
>
> *Maybe it was a little bit too hard.* [Junior student, Focus group 18]
>
> *It's really fast, and it's really hard.* [Senior student, Focus group 2]

In most focus groups, suggestions for improvements were provided, including slow the pace of the game down to make it easier, have fewer children sneezing at the same time, or slow the time down between students sneezing, include more levels of different difficulty such as an *easy* level or have a tutorial level, and make the instructions clearer and simpler:

> *The thing is that they all sneezed at the same time and I didn't have enough time to put the tissue in the bin, so that is really a struggle.* [Junior student, Focus group 16]
>
> *Yeah too fast paced, maybe slow it down to start off with one person infected, and then do levels as you did with the Pac man one.* [Senior student, Focus group 22]
>
> *The instructions could have been clearer.* [Senior student questionnaire response]

Suggestions for game improvements and modifications from the qualitative focus groups and evaluation questions are summarized in Textboxes 1 and 2.

Quantitative Data

Tables 3 and 4 show the *percentage correct before* the game intervention, *percentage correct after* the game intervention, and the *P* value for junior (7-11 years) and senior (11-15 years) school-aged students, respectively. Table 5 shows a comparison of baseline and postgaming knowledge between age groups.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Textbox 1. Suggestions for Body Busters game improvements from qualitative focus groups and evaluation questions.

Body Busters

1. When the user loses a life, do not slow the avatar down but either:
   - increase the speed of harmful bacteria and viruses or
   - increase the size of harmful bacteria and viruses
2. Make instructions clearer
   - keep the pictorial instructions
   - add written instructions
3. Have a visible key for the different microbes in the game play
4. Add more levels in different areas of the body

Textbox 2. Suggestions for Stop the Spread game improvements from qualitative focus groups and evaluation questions.

Stop the Spread

1. Slow the pace of the game down to make it easier
   - have fewer children sneezing at the same time
   - slow the time down between students sneezing
2. Include more levels of different difficulty
   - have an option for an *easy* level
   - have a tutorial or practice level
3. Make the instructions simpler and clearer

Table 3. Improvement scores by question for junior schools.

Question or statement	Correct before, %	Correct after, %	Odds ratio (95% CI)	*P* value
Which of these microbes causes coughs and colds?	35	29	0.57 (0.21-1.46)	.29
What is the best way to treat an infection with a virus?	44	47	1.25 (0.55-2.92)	.70
Antibiotics help cure colds	33	28	0.60 (0.23-1.46)	.31
Which of these infections could antibiotics be used to treat?	31	46	2.88 (1.24-7.43)	.01[a]
Most coughs and colds get better without antibiotics	59	68	2.22 (0.97-5.54)	.06[b]
All microbes are bad or harmful	78	84	1.50 (0.68-3.41)	.36
You cannot infect other people around you through coughs and sneezes	79	78	0.93 (0.42-2.07)	>.99
The more people are vaccinated, the more people are protected from that infection	60	72	3.00 (1.23-8.35)	.01[a]
By getting vaccinated, you can also protect others around you from infection	59	68	2.22 (0.97-5.54)	.06[b]
Antibiotics (list); kill good and bad bacteria	22	33	2.30 (1.05-5.41)	.04[a]
Vaccinations (list); protect us from catching and spreading diseases	79	78	0.75 (0.21-2.46)	.79
The best way to stop microbes in coughs and sneezes spreading is to (list)	61	71	4.00 (1.29-16.4)	.01[a]

[a]Significant at .05.

[b]Approaching significance at .06.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Table 4. Improvement scores by question for senior schools.

Question or statement	Correct before, %	Correct after, %	Odds ratio (95% CI)	*P* value
Which of these microbes causes coughs and colds?	47	46	0.88 (0.52-1.49)	.71
What is the best way to treat an infection with a virus?	46	46	1.06 (0.65-1.71)	.91
Antibiotics help cure colds	61	49	0.24 (0.11-0.45)	<.001[a]
Which of these infections could antibiotics be used to treat?	56	63	1.80 (1.08-3.06)	.02[a]
Most coughs and colds get better without antibiotics	67	73	1.79 (1.10-2.95)	.02[a]
All microbes are bad or harmful	95	92	0.40 (0.15-0.95)	.04[a]
You cannot infect other people around you through coughs and sneezes	92	90	0.72 (0.37-1.37)	.36
The more people are vaccinated, the more people are protected from that infection	84	89	1.89 (1.04-3.55)	.04[a]
By getting vaccinated, you can also protect others around you from infection	55	65	2.54 (1.56-4.26)	<.001[a]
Antibiotics (list); kill good and bad bacteria	36	46	3.12 (1.78-5.74)	<.001[a]
Vaccinations (list); protect us from catching and spreading diseases	93	94	1.50 (0.63-3.73)	.42
The best way to stop microbes in coughs and sneezes spreading is to (list)	79	83	1.94 (1.03-3.79)	.04[a]

[a]Significant at .05.

Table 5. Comparison between age groups of baseline and postgaming knowledge.

Question or statement	Baseline, %			Postgaming, %		
	Junior correct before	Senior correct before	Difference in knowledge	Junior correct after	Senior correct after	Difference in knowledge
1. Which of these microbes causes coughs and colds?	34	47	13[a]	29	46	17[a]
2. What is the best way to treat an infection with a virus?	44	46	2[a]	47	47	0[b]
3. Antibiotics help cure colds	33	61	28[a]	28	49	22[a]
4. Which of these infections could antibiotics be used to treat?	31	56	25[a]	46	63	17[a]
5. Most coughs and colds get better without antibiotics	59	67	8[a]	68	73	5[a]
6. All microbes are bad or harmful	78	95	17[a]	84	92	8[a]
7. You cannot infect other people around you through coughs and sneezes	79	92	13[a]	78	90	12[a]
8. The more people are vaccinated, the more people are protected from that infection	60	84	24[a]	72	89	17[a]
9. By getting vaccinated, you can also protect others around you from infection	59	55	4[b]	68	65	3[b]
10. Antibiotics (list); kill good and bad bacteria	22	36	14[a]	33	46	13[a]
11. Vaccinations (list); protect us from catching and spreading diseases	79	93	13[a]	78	94	17[a]
12. The best way to stop microbes in coughs and sneezes spreading is to (list)	61	79	18[a]	71	83	12[a]

[a]A higher knowledge in senior students.

[b]A higher knowledge in junior students.

Junior Student Knowledge About Antibiotics and Vaccinations

Over 70% of junior students had high baseline knowledge of learning outcomes covered in questions 6, 7, and 11, and there was only a small nonsignificant increase in correct answers:

(6) All microbes are bad or harmful (78%-84%; *P*=.36)

(7) You cannot infect other people around you through coughs and sneezes. True or false (79%-78%; *P*>.99)

(11) Vaccinations protect us from catching and spreading diseases (79%-78%; *P*=.79).

XSL•FO
RenderX

Low baseline knowledge (<40% correct answers) was seen in questions 1, 3, 4, and 10:

(1) Which of these microbes causes coughs and colds? Bacteria or fungus or virus (34%-29%; *P*=.29)

(3) Antibiotics help cure colds? True or false (33%-28%; *P*=.31)

(4) Which of these infections could antibiotics be used to treat? Bacterial or viral or fungal (31%-46%; *P*=.01)

(10) Antibiotics: *kill good and bad bacteria* (22%-33%; *P*=.04).

Knowledge of the 7- to 11-year-old students significantly improved for 4 of the questions (4, 8, 10, and 12):

(4) Which of these infections could antibiotics be used to treat? Bacterial or viral or fungal (31%-46%; *P*=.01)

(8) The more people are vaccinated; the more people are protected from that infection. True or false (60%-72%; *P*=.01)

(10) Antibiotics: *kill good and bad bacteria* (22%-33%; *P*=.04)

(12) The best way to stop microbes in coughs and sneezes spreading is to: "catch coughs and sneezes in a tissue and throw the tissue away" (61%-71%; *P*=.01).

Knowledge improvement for 2 other questions (5 and 9) was approaching significance (*P*=.06):

(5) Most coughs and colds get better without antibiotics. True or false (59%-68%; *P*=.06)

(9) By getting vaccinated, you can also protect others around you from infection. True or false (59%-68%; *P*=.06).

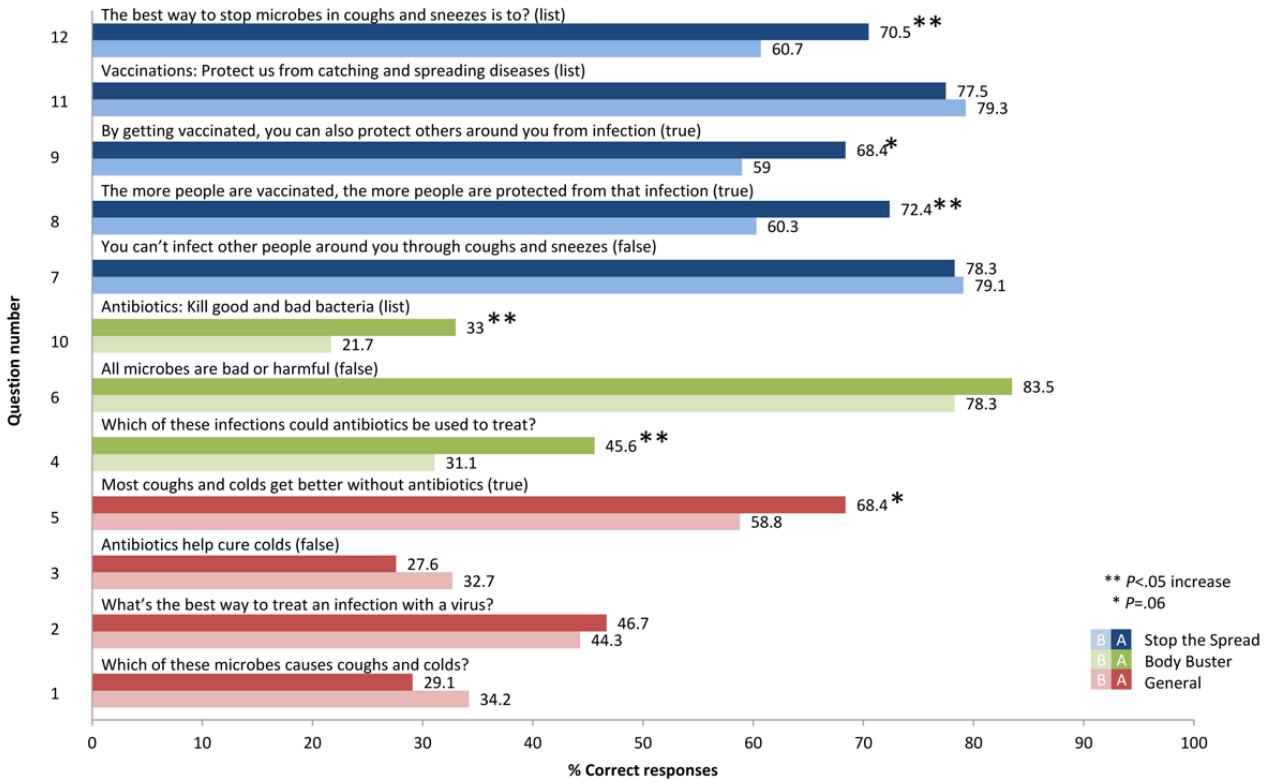
Questions that saw the greatest improvement in knowledge for junior students were question 4 (31%-46%; *P*=.01), 8 (60%-72%; *P*=.01), and 10 (22%-33%; *P*=.04). Figure 3 provides before and after knowledge percentages and levels of significance.

There was no evidence of a significant knowledge change for questions 6, 7, and 11 or the 3 general questions (1, 2, and 3), which covered knowledge that could be indirectly gained from playing the 2 games.

Senior Student Knowledge About Antibiotics and Vaccinations

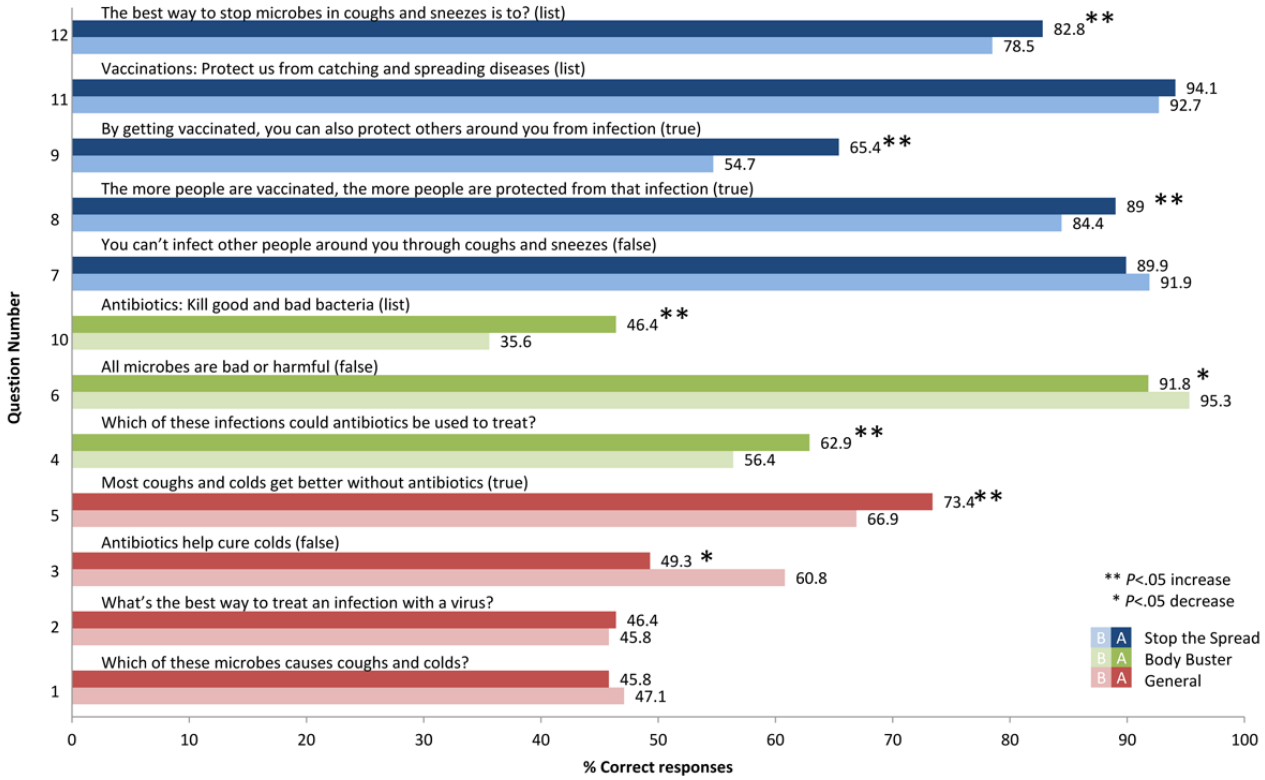
Senior school students had greater baseline knowledge than junior students in 10 out of the 12 questions. Senior students had high baseline knowledge (>92% correct scores) to the same 3 questions as junior students (6, 7, and 11). In addition, the 2 questions (8 and 12) on vaccinations and sneezing behaviors had scores less than 70%. Senior students had significantly higher baseline knowledge scores for all bar 2 questions, so it was difficult to improve as much as the junior students. Low baseline knowledge (<40% correct scores) was seen in question 10 (Antibiotics [list] correct answer *Kill good and bad bacteria*).

Figure 3. Percentage of junior students answering questions correctly before and after playing Body Busters and Stop the Spread Games.



XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 4. Percentage of senior students answering questions correctly before and after playing Body Busters and Stop the Spread games.



There were significant improvements in knowledge among senior students, with 6 out of the 12 questions showing a significant increase in the odds of students answering correctly (4, 5, 8, 9, 10, and 12), which were the same 6 questions that showed significant improvements among junior students. Questions that saw the greatest improvement in knowledge for senior students were questions 9 (By getting vaccinated, you can also protect others around you from infections; 10.7%) and 10 (Antibiotics kill good and bad bacteria; 10.8%). Figure 4 provides before and after knowledge percentages and levels of significance.

Question 6 (All microbes are bad or harmful; false), evaluating a learning outcome of Body Busters, and a general question 3 (Antibiotics help cure colds; false) showed a significant decrease in knowledge (95%-92% and 61%-49%, respectively).

There was no evidence of a significant knowledge change for questions 7 (You cannot infect other people around you through coughs and sneezes; false) and 11 (Vaccinations protect us from catching and spreading diseases), for which over 90% answered correctly before playing the games. Two other general questions, 1 (Which of these microbes causes coughs and colds?) and 2 (What is the best way to treat an infection with a virus?), did not see a significant change in knowledge.

Discussion

Principal Findings

This study indicates that playing the 2 e-Bug games had a significant ($P<.05$) positive effect on students' knowledge on 6 out of the 12 questions:

1. Antibiotics are used to treat bacterial infections (question 4)
2. Antibiotics kill good and bad bacteria (question 10)
3. Most coughs and colds get better without antibiotics (junior $P=.06$; question 5)
4. The best way to stop microbes in coughs and sneezes spreading is to catch coughs and sneezes in a tissue and throw the tissue away (question 12)
5. The more people are vaccinated, the more people are protected from that infection (question 8)
6. By getting vaccinated, you can also protect others around you from infection (junior $P=.06$; question 9).

However, the games were indicated to have a detrimental effect on 2 true or false questions in the older students aged 11 to 16 years:

(3) Antibiotics help cure colds (false)

(6) All microbes are bad or harmful (false).

XSL•FO
RenderX

Suggestions for this detrimental effect include the following: question 3 was perhaps not obvious that viruses cause colds in either of the games, and question 6 had a very high baseline knowledge of 95%; therefore, it would have been difficult to see an improvement in knowledge. Modifications to the games will be required to address this detrimental effect, and developers should consider the age group of their target audience.

Another main finding of the study was the comparison between age groups of baseline knowledge and postintervention knowledge: junior (7-11 years) and senior (12-15 years). Baseline knowledge for senior students was higher than junior students on 11 out of the 12 questions; juniors scored 4.3% higher in question 9. Postintervention knowledge for senior students was higher than that for junior students in 10 out of the 12 questions; the 2 questions that were lower than juniors (2 and 9) were only lower by 0.3% and 4.3%, respectively. Positive knowledge change for juniors was greater in 9 out of the 12 questions compared with senior students, suggesting that the e-Bug games had a greater impact on junior student knowledge; the researchers therefore recommend that the e-Bug games should be targeted at junior school–aged children and should be further promoted to this age group.

The high baseline knowledge for senior students could be a reflection that the questions were too easy for older students and perhaps senior students obtained other learning from the games, which researchers could have picked up with different or more difficult questions.

Overall, both junior and senior students reported Body Busters to be more enjoyable than Stop the Spread on the Likert scale responses and thematic analysis of the focus group transcripts; this is supported by Google Analytics. During the academic year, September 1, 2016, to August 31, 2017, junior and senior students viewed Body Busters (8905 and 3814 views, respectively) more than Stop the Spread (6803 and 3027 views, respectively). During the same academic year, on average, junior and senior students played Body Busters (01:40 and 01:51 min, respectively) for longer than Stop the Spread (01:01 and 01:36 min, respectively). This may be because Body Busters was easier and more enjoyable; however, Stop the Spread lead to a greater improvement in knowledge, particularly about appropriate sneezing behaviors and vaccinations in this study. Suggestions for improvements on both games were provided by students, and the e-Bug team will consider the suggestions when making modifications for improvement.

Strengths and Limitations

A mixed-method approach is a strength of the study; using both quantitative and qualitative methods of enquiry enables students' knowledge to be measured and students' views and intentions to be explored in some depth. The study is cross-sectional and representative of schools and students across the United Kingdom; a large number of students from a range of schools in different areas of the United Kingdom with different levels of deprivation were involved. This allows us to evaluate baseline knowledge about vaccinations and antibiotics in young people, the largest sample of this type. Baseline knowledge can be used to inform educational needs in different age groups within National Institute of Health and Care (NICE) recommendations. Qualitative focus groups enabled the exploration of a range of students' views; it also brought synergism, snowballing of ideas, and stimulation of participants, which will assist in making improvements to the games.

The study evaluation allowed students to play each game in a classroom setting for only 5 min. This mimicked a real-life class setting where they would usually play Web-based games and discuss the games together, and 5 min is the usual length of time it takes to play 1 game. However, the 5 min of game play might not replicate the normal duration for game play; 5 min per game might not have been long enough for some students to gain the desired knowledge. For example, in Body Busters, viruses only appeared in level 3, and some students might have struggled to reach this level, which could partly explain any variation in percentage correct answers. The intervention in this study was used in isolation and perhaps the learning outcomes can be achieved better when the games are used as a tool to reinforce teaching about each topic in the classroom or in the home environment.

The questionnaires used in this study were based on questionnaires that have been used in previous e-Bug evaluations [2,3,16]. However, to eliminate any question style bias, future work with young students should use a questionnaire design that has the same format for each question, that is, all multiple-choice questions with 1 correct answer or all true or false questions to make it easier to understand for younger students.

Baseline knowledge was very high in senior students, especially about vaccinations and sneezing behaviors, so there is little need for improvements; however, modifications, including adding more levels to the games or adding extra learning outcomes, are required.

In the focus groups and evaluation questionnaires, junior students found it difficult to vocalize their thoughts beyond close-ended questions. Furthermore, many junior students found writing answers to the open responses on the evaluation form difficult to express their views, which was observed by researchers during data collection; however, data saturation was reached during the focus groups, suggesting no new themes would emerge.

Comparison With Existing Literature

Improvements in students' knowledge after the delivery of an e-Bug lesson [2,3,4,6] and the e-Bug Web-based games [16] have been well documented. Our research adds to the body of literature to support the value of the e-Bug resources and Web-based games in educating children on hygiene and antibiotic topics. Limited research has been conducted about school-aged children's knowledge of antibiotics and vaccination topics in England. One e-Bug evaluation across 3 European countries found that junior- and senior-aged students in 1 county in England had high baseline knowledge about the spread of infection (68%-78%) and low levels of baseline knowledge about the treatment and prevention of infection (29%-34%) [6]; this is reflected in this study as students had greater baseline knowledge about vaccinations than antibiotics generally.

XSL•FO
RenderX

A previous evaluation [16] of an earlier version of Body Busters showed that it increased knowledge of antibiotics in children, created a flow-like state in players, and was enjoyed the most out of the 3 games evaluated. Suggestions for modifications to the game included the following: more information in the introductory text, make the difference between viruses and bacteria more obvious, and create a steady increase in difficulty level as the game progresses [16]. The changes suggested by Hale et al were made in 2015 and aided the enjoyment reported by students in this study. However, this study is a much larger evaluation including more student questionnaires and focus group responses from a wider student sample across the United Kingdom; therefore, this evaluation provides new evidence to support the importance of the e-Bug project, for future modifications to the games and for future e-Bug game developments.

Systematic reviews and meta-analyses of gamification, serious games, and apps about health topics found that they can have a positive impact on health and well-being in the general population [17-20]. Other gamification studies reported positive associations between gamification and school-aged knowledge in several health topics; a randomized controlled trial (RCT) of a serious game promoting oral health found a significant improvement in knowledge of children after playing the game compared with before playing the game [13]. Likewise, an RCT for a game educating children about asthma found an increase in knowledge and improved attitudes at postintervention and follow-up as compared with control [11]. This study adds to the literature to support the positive effect of serious games on knowledge and attitudes of school children on important health issues. A meta-analysis of serious games for healthy lifestyle promotion was found to be appealing to individuals regardless of age or gender, showing this could be an intervention suitable for a more general audience than just children [20].

Other antimicrobial games have been developed but very few have been evaluated and on such a large scale. Recently, there has been an increase in serious games about the topic of microbiology and antimicrobial resistance, such as the Longitude prize's *Superbugs*, showing this is a rapidly growing area of serious games. An infection prevention gamification tool called Germ Defence, encouraging individuals of any age to pledge to wash their hands more often, has been evaluated as part of a large RCT [21]. The RCT with over 20,000 participants found that those who used the Germ Defence website had fewer colds, flu, and stomach upsets than those who had not seen the website [21], providing further evidence for the positive effect of gamification on knowledge and health behaviors.

Implications for Future Research

Students had significant increases in knowledge about antibiotics, showing that e-Bug helps to reinforce the 2017 national antibiotics campaign *keep antibiotics working*. Students had significant increase in knowledge and behavioral intentions about appropriate sneezing behaviors, which directly support the 2013 national campaign *catch it, bin it, kill it*. Future national infection-related public health campaigns could link to the e-Bug games to encourage schools to use the games in their teaching and reinforce the campaigns.

Further research is required to investigate whether the knowledge gained from the e-Bug games is maintained or has changed future behavior. Additional qualitative research with teachers is needed to explore and understand how the e-Bug educational games can be used in a lesson to support learning.

e-Bug will continue to follow NICE guidance and work with educators and students to develop and promote resources for teaching children and young people about microbes, infection, and antibiotics in a fun and interactive way.

Conclusions

Science pedagogy Web-based games, including the e-Bug games, have the potential to engage and excite children and young people about important public health topics and aid in the learning of knowledge. To increase gaming, the e-Bug games should be both fun and challenging.

This study shows that 2 e-Bug educational games, Body Busters and Stop the Spread, covering learning topics about microbes, infection prevention, and antibiotics, are valuable to school-aged children's knowledge. Body Busters is greatly enjoyed by and engaged school-aged children; a few modifications about antibiotics that can kill good and bad bacteria are required to reinforce learning outcomes. Stop the Spread is enjoyed by school-aged children to a lesser degree and more modifications, including slowing the game down, are required to retain user engagement. However, learning outcomes are very well covered in Stop the Spread. Health commissioning schools should target and promote the Body Busters and Stop the Spread e-Bug games, especially toward junior students (aged 7-11 years), as they showed the greatest improvement in knowledge. Further levels with more learning outcomes will facilitate increased learning in older students (aged 12-15 years).

Acknowledgments

The authors would like to thank the staff in the PHE Primary Care Unit, particularly Stephen Cooper and Rowshonara Syeda for their help in data collection and Dr Carla Brown for her comments on the manuscript. The authors would also like to thank Grove Street Media for their work in developing the 2 e-Bug games. The authors would like to thank all educational providers, teachers, and students who took part in the research. This work was supported by PHE.

Conflicts of Interest

At the time this study was conducted, CVE, VLY, CVH, and CAMM all worked for PHE to produce and disseminate e-Bug teaching resources for schools covering microbes, the spread, treatment and prevention of infection, and antibiotic resistance.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Multimedia Appendix 1

Student questionnaires.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 85KB - games_v7i1e10915_app1.pdf]

References

1. Eley CV, Young VL, Hoekstra BA, McNulty CA. An evaluation of educators' views on the e-Bug resources in England. J Biol Educ 2017 Feb 6;52(2):166-173. [doi: 10.1080/00219266.2017.1285808]
2. Young VL, Rajapandian V, Eley CV, Hoekstra BA, Lecky DM, McNulty CA. Monitoring web site usage of e-Bug: a hygiene and antibiotic awareness resource for children. JMIR Res Protoc 2015 Nov 13;4(4):e131 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/resprot.4049] [Medline: 26567127]
3. Lecky DM, Hawking MK, Verlander NQ, McNulty CA. Using interactive family science shows to improve public knowledge on antibiotic resistance: does it work? PLoS One 2014;9(8):e104556 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0104556] [Medline: 25162505]
4. Hawking MK, Lecky DM, Verlander NQ, McNulty CA. Fun on the farm: evaluation of a lesson to teach students about the spread of infection on school farm visits. PLoS One 2013;8(10):e75641 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0075641] [Medline: 24146765]
5. de Quincey E, Kostkova P, Jawaheer G, Farrell D, McNulty C, Weinberg J, e-Bug Working Group. Evaluating the online activity of users of the e-Bug web site. J Antimicrob Chemother 2011 Jun;66 Suppl 5:v45-v49. [doi: 10.1093/jac/dkr123] [Medline: 21680587]
6. Lecky DM, McNulty CA, Touboul P, Herotova TK, Benes J, Dellamonica P, e-Bug Working Group. Evaluation of e-Bug, an educational pack, teaching about prudent antibiotic use and hygiene, in the Czech Republic, France and England. J Antimicrob Chemother 2010 Dec;65(12):2674-2684. [doi: 10.1093/jac/dkq356] [Medline: 20956353]
7. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. 2017 Jan. Antimicrobial Stewardship: Changing Risk-related Behaviours in the General Population URL: https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng63 [accessed 2018-04-30] [WebCite Cache ID 6z3rXdkKg]
8. Ritterfeld U, Cody M, Vorderer P, editors. Serious Games: Mechanisms and Effects. New York: Routledge; 2010:530.
9. Wouters P, van Nimwegen C, van Oostendorp H, van der Spek ED. A meta-analysis of the cognitive and motivational effects of serious games. J Educ Psychol 2013;105(2):249-265.
10. Johnson D, Deterding S, Kuhn KA, Staneva A, Stoyanov S, Hides L. Gamification for health and wellbeing: a systematic review of the literature. Internet Interv 2016 Nov;6:89-106 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/j.invent.2016.10.002] [Medline: 30135818]
11. Greer M, Lin L, Atkinson RK. Using a computer game to teach school-aged children about asthma. Interact Learn Environ 2017;25(4):431-438. [doi: 10.1080/10494820.2015.1135469]
12. Jones BA, Madden GJ, Wengreen HJ. The FIT Game: preliminary evaluation of a gamification approach to increasing fruit and vegetable consumption in school. Prev Med 2014 Nov;68:76-79. [doi: 10.1016/j.ypmed.2014.04.015] [Medline: 24768916]
13. Aljafari A, Gallagher JE, Hosey MT. Can oral health education be delivered to high-caries-risk children and their parents using a computer game? - A randomised controlled trial. Int J Paediatr Dent 2017 Nov;27(6):476-485. [doi: 10.1111/ipd.12286] [Medline: 28052471]
14. Maheswari UN, Asokan S, Kumaran ST. Effects of conventional vs game-based oral health education on children's oral health-related knowledge and oral hygiene status - a prospective study. Oral Health Prev Dent 2014;12(4):331-336. [doi: 10.3290/j.ohpd.a32677] [Medline: 25197737]
15. e-Bug. URL: https://www.e-Bug.eu [accessed 2018-10-16] [WebCite Cache ID 73CkkvgGT]
16. Hale AR, Young VL, Grand A, McNulty CA. Can gaming increase antibiotic awareness in children? A mixed-methods approach. JMIR Serious Games 2017 Mar 24;5(1):e5 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/games.6420] [Medline: 28341618]
17. Johnson D, Deterding S, Kuhn KA, Staneva A, Stoyanov S, Hides L. Gamification for health and wellbeing: a systematic review of the literature. Internet Interv 2016 Nov;6:89-106 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/j.invent.2016.10.002] [Medline: 30135818]
18. Lister C, West JH, Cannon B, Sax T, Brodegard D. Just a fad? Gamification in health and fitness apps. JMIR Serious Games 2014 Aug 4;2(2):e9 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/games.3413] [Medline: 25654660]
19. Edwards EA, Lumsden J, Rivas C, Seed L, Edwards LA, Thiyagarajan A, et al. Gamification for health promotion: systematic review of behaviour change techniques in smartphone apps. BMJ Open 2016;6(10). [doi: 10.1136/bmjopen-2016-012447]
20. DeSmet A, Van Ryckeghem D, Compernolle S, Baranowski T, Thompson D, Crombez G, et al. A meta-analysis of serious digital games for healthy lifestyle promotion. Prev Med 2014 Dec;69:95-107 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/j.ypmed.2014.08.026] [Medline: 25172024]
21. Little P, Stuart B, Hobbs F, Moore M, Barnett J, Popoola D, et al. An internet-delivered handwashing intervention to modify influenza-like illness and respiratory infection transmission (PRIMIT): a primary care randomised trial. Lancet 2015 Oct 24;386(10004):1631-1639. [doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(15)60127-1] [Medline: 26256072]

XSL•FO
RenderX

Abbreviations

NICE: National Institute of Health and Care
PHE: Public Health England
RCT: randomized controlled trial

Edited by G Eysenbach; submitted 30.04.18; peer-reviewed by R Alkoudmani, M Roccetti; comments to author 19.07.18; revised version received 28.08.18; accepted 28.08.18; published 01.02.19.

Please cite as:
Eley CV, Young VL, Hayes CV, Verlander NQ, McNulty CAM
Young People's Knowledge of Antibiotics and Vaccinations and Increasing This Knowledge Through Gaming: Mixed-Methods Study Using e-Bug
JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e10915
URL: https://games.jmir.org/2019/1/e10915/
doi:10.2196/10915
PMID:30707096

©Charlotte Victoria Eley, Vicki Louise Young, Catherine Victoria Hayes, Neville Q Verlander, Cliodna Ann Miriam McNulty. Originally published in JMIR Serious Games (http://games.jmir.org), 01.02.2019. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR Serious Games, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://games.jmir.org, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Original Paper

Serious Games in Surgical Medical Education: A Virtual Emergency Department as a Tool for Teaching Clinical Reasoning to Medical Students

Seung-Hun Chon[1], MD; Ferdinand Timmermann[2]; Thomas Dratsch[2], DPhil; Nikolai Schuelper[3], MD, MME; Patrick Plum[1], MD; Felix Berlth[1], MD; Rabi Raj Datta[1], MD; Christoph Schramm[4], MD; Stefan Haneder[5], MD; Martin Richard Späth[6,7], MD; Martin Dübbers[1], MD; Julia Kleinert[1], MD; Tobias Raupach[8,9], MD, MME; Christiane Bruns[1], MD; Robert Kleinert[1], MD

[1]Department of General, Visceral and Cancer Surgery, University Hospital of Cologne, Cologne, Germany
[2]University of Cologne, Cologne, Germany
[3]Department of Haematology and Medical Oncology, University Medical Centre Göttingen, Göttingen, Germany
[4]Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, University Hospital of Cologne, Cologne, Germany
[5]Institute of Diagnostic and Interventional Radiology, University Hospital of Cologne, Cologne, Germany
[6]Department II of Internal Medicine and Center for Molecular Medicine, University of Cologne, Cologne, Germany
[7]Cologne Excellence Cluster on Cellular Stress Responses in Aging Associated Diseases, University of Cologne, Cologne, Germany
[8]Department of Cardiology and Pneumology, University Medical Centre Göttingen, Göttingen, Germany
[9]Division of Medical Education Research and Curriculum Development, University Medical Centre Göttingen, Göttingen, Germany

Corresponding Author:
Seung-Hun Chon, MD
Department of General, Visceral and Cancer Surgery
University Hospital of Cologne
Kerpener Strasse 62
Cologne, 50937
Germany
Phone: 49 221 478 4864
Fax: 49 221 478 86227
Email: seung-hun.chon@uk-koeln.de

Abstract

Background: Serious games enable the simulation of daily working practices and constitute a potential tool for teaching both declarative and procedural knowledge. The availability of educational serious games offering a high-fidelity, three-dimensional environment in combination with profound medical background is limited, and most published studies have assessed student satisfaction rather than learning outcome as a function of game use.

Objective: This study aimed to test the effect of a serious game simulating an emergency department (“EMERGE”) on students’ declarative and procedural knowledge, as well as their satisfaction with the serious game.

Methods: This nonrandomized trial was performed at the Department of General, Visceral and Cancer Surgery at University Hospital Cologne, Germany. A total of 140 medical students in the clinical part of their training (5th to 12th semester) self-selected to participate in this experimental study. Declarative knowledge (measured with 20 multiple choice questions) and procedural knowledge (measured with written questions derived from an Objective Structured Clinical Examination station) were assessed before and after working with EMERGE. Students’ impression of the effectiveness and applicability of EMERGE were measured on a 6-point Likert scale.

Results: A pretest-posttest comparison yielded a significant increase in declarative knowledge. The percentage of correct answers to multiple choice questions increased from before (mean 60.4, SD 16.6) to after (mean 76.0, SD 11.6) playing EMERGE ($P<.001$). The effect on declarative knowledge was larger in students in lower semesters than in students in higher semesters ($P<.001$). Additionally, students’ overall impression of EMERGE was positive.

Conclusions: Students self-selecting to use a serious game in addition to formal teaching gain declarative and procedural knowledge.

XSL•FO
RenderX

(JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e13028) doi:10.2196/13028

KEYWORDS

serious game; surgical education; clinical reasoning; virtual emergency department; medical education

Introduction

E-learning programs are now widely used for teaching declarative or theoretical knowledge [1,2]. One important part of clinical education is the transition of declarative knowledge to procedural knowledge [3], which is the basis for mastering clinical workflows in diagnosis and therapy or clinical reasoning. Virtual patient simulators [4] and serious games offer the possibility for teaching declarative and procedural [5] knowledge [6,7]. They are valuable in training specific medical scenarios that are hard to reproduce in the daily curriculum, such as rare clinical conditions, or are resource intensive (ie, major incident triage training) [8]. Even in common medical scenarios, serious games and virtual patient simulators enable virtual experience [9], as students can face the consequences of different decisions without putting real patients at risk.

Repetitive training allows the internalization of clinical patterns that are relevant for the necessary procedural performance [10]. Home-based distance learning with individual pace and number of repetitions allows equalization of students' knowledge enabling effective face-to-face-teaching. Serious games extend the possibilities of virtual patient simulators because they are known to motivate students [11] as identification with an avatar (immersion) influences important incentives for intrinsic motivation, such as a sense of autonomy and a sense of achievement [12]. However, the amount of immersion depends on technical and, in particular, graphics quality, which should be "state of the art" [13,14]. The availability of serious games for clinical education is limited [15]. Commercial development of such a high-fidelity project is resource intensive [16], which may require subsidies because development outlay would necessitate high levels of sales to achieve profitability. In addition to technical quality, the success of serious games strongly depends on the amount of curricular content available [15]. Commercial serious games often lack medical content and are thus limited from a curricular perspective [17].

Therefore, it is desirable that the development of such educational methods is in the hands of universities because they are the main promoters of innovative educational methods and they are responsible for curricular content. However, the benefit of an educational tool of this kind is questionable if the impact on knowledge gain is still under discussion [11,15]. Moreover, most serious games are stand-alone solutions that cover only small aspects of clinical education [17] and are often not available outside published studies.

EMERGE is a serious game that combines both factors: it fosters training of clinical reasoning with state-of-the-art graphics that are likely to facilitate high immersion. We recently demonstrated the noninferiority of EMERGE compared to small-group teaching with respect to student learning outcome on clinical reasoning [18]. The aim of this study is to test EMERGE as an educational tool and determine the effect on student motivation and knowledge gain.

Methods

Description of the Serious Game

EMERGE allows free navigation through a virtual emergency department. A digital mentor supports the student while dealing with the interface and treating patients. When starting the simulation, students get information about the incoming patient from an emergency physician, they dispatch the patient to an examination room, take the patient's medical history, order diagnostic tests, and establish a diagnosis and treatment. When taking the patient's medical history, students are free to choose from an alphabetical list of 70 questions. Students can ask the questions in any order. If one of the questions is repeated, the virtual patient always responds with the same answer. Students are free to choose any diagnostic test or treatment that a modern emergency department offers. Students are not restricted to medically indicated tests nor to the sequence for taking these tests. All medical decisions have real consequences. For instance, patients respond to treatments and medications have effects and side effects. EMERGE was developed at Göttingen Medical School in collaboration with the University Medical Centre Hamburg-Eppendorf ensuring the educational quality of the program. EMERGE was programmed by PatientZero Games GmbH, at a cost of approximately €200,000.

EMERGE displays the classic features of a modern computer game: free interaction between the player and the game, a certain challenge (ie, a critically ill patient), a game story as the student plays a virtual doctor, and high immersion owing to high-fidelity graphics and an intuitive graphical user interface. A demo of EMERGE is freely accessible [17,19].

Participants

Students of all clinical years (5th to 12th semester) of medical education at Cologne University (Cologne, Germany) were invited to sign up for the study via mailing lists, flyers, and social networks. Each semester consists of approximately 200 students; thus, 1600 students were invited. A total of 140 medical students (46 males, 94 females; mean age 24.1 years, age range 20-33 years; response rate 140/1600, 8.8%) volunteered to participate (see Table 1 for demographic information). Overall 67.1% (94/140) of our participants were female medical students. This distribution of male and female medical students is in line with the national average in Germany with approximately two-thirds of medical students being female [20]. Students received €15 for their participation. The Ethics Committee of the Medical Faculty at the University of Cologne approved the evaluation. The Institutional Review Board was informed, and there were no objections.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Table 1. Demographic information about the students who played EMERGE (N=140).

Variables	Male	Female
Number of students, n	46	94
Age, mean (SD)	24.5 (2.6)	23.8 (2.7)
Semester, n		
5th semester	5	11
6th semester	10	28
7th semester	7	18
8th semester	8	19
9th semester	3	8
10th semester	1	4
Practical year (11th and 12th semester)	12	6

Study Design

The effect of EMERGE on declarative and procedural knowledge was analyzed in a pretest-posttest design. Students first completed the questions measuring procedural and declarative knowledge. After students had played EMERGE, they again completed the questions measuring procedural and declarative knowledge. Additionally, after students had finished playing EMERGE, they also answered several questions measuring their impressions of EMERGE.

Procedure

In December 2017 and January 2018, 35 gaming sessions lasting 90 minutes each were conducted with four students allocated to each session (only four computers were available for this study). At the beginning of the experiment, students were greeted by the experimenter (FT). Each computer corresponded with one of four different case scenarios. Students were unaware of the associations between computers and case scenarios. Students were free to choose any of the four computers. After all students had taken their seats, they were instructed by the experimenter to complete the 20 multiple choice questions and the written Objective Structured Clinical Examination (OSCE) questions. Students were given 40 minutes to complete the questions. After that, students were instructed to imagine being a first-year intern in a real emergency department. Students were further instructed to behave as if their decisions had real consequences. After the instructions, the experimenter launched EMERGE and introduced them to the general controls of EMERGE. At the beginning of the game, students started their session in the entrance hall of the emergency department. A virtual map showed students the way to one of the various rooms within the department (Figure 1), where two virtual patients were already waiting for them. Students were free to decide which patient to interact with first. The time to play EMERGE was not limited. Students played for a mean 31.7 (SD 7.4) minutes. The game ended after students had diagnosed and treated the patients or transferred them to another department for treatment. At the end of the game, students were debriefed by a virtual doctor, who informed them about the correct diagnosis and treatment for each patient. After the students had finished playing EMERGE, they again completed the 20 multiple choice questions and the written OSCE questions.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 1. Sample screenshots of EMERGE. Students could freely interact with the environment.

Medical Content

To increase the generalizability of the study and to ensure that the results would not be limited to just one condition, we created four distinct clinical cases: pneumothorax, sigmoid diverticulitis, mesenteric ischemia (easy), and mesenteric ischemia (difficult). These cases were selected because they are part of the standard surgical curriculum for German medical students [21]. At the University of Cologne, the surgical curriculum is spread out over several semesters. In the second clinical semester, students attend the main surgical lecture, covering all the declarative knowledge for the diseases used in this study. Additionally, students complete the first part of surgical bedside teaching. In the fifth clinical semester, students complete the second part of surgical bedside teaching. Moreover, as a part of the curriculum at the University of Cologne, clinical subjects are taught throughout the whole 6 years (12 semesters) of medical school, which results in students being presented with similar aspects several times during their training. For all diseases, correct diagnostic and treatment patterns were defined in process charts, as described in a previous article [22]. Briefly summarized, these process charts served as a blueprint for optimal diagnostic and therapeutic workflows. Congruence between student pathways and blueprints formed the basis for the assessment of student performance. Blueprints were based on published guidelines for each disease [23-25]. The four different clinical cases were combined into four different case scenarios (see Textbox 1). In each case scenario, students were presented with two medical conditions. Because the diagnosis of mesenteric ischemia requires profound clinical reasoning and experience, this condition was divided into an easy and a difficult case. In the easy case, serum lactate was high, and the patient suffered from an arrhythmia. These signs are strong indicators of this clinical condition. However, there is no laboratory value that is associated with mesenteric ischemia. A functional liver is able to eliminate lactate, even when there is a severe ischemic condition. Hence, the second case represented a patient without indirect signs, such as elevated lactate and arrhythmia. Due to restraints in the recruiting of participants for the study, only four different case scenarios could be tested. The cases of pneumothorax, sigmoid diverticulitis, and mesenteric ischemia (easy) were each used twice in the study. The case of mesenteric ischemia (difficult) was only used once. Because only 140 students participated in the study, it was not possible to create a fifth case scenario with an additional 35 participants to repeat the mesenteric ischemia (difficult) case.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Textbox 1. Combinations of the different clinical cases in the four groups (N=140).

- Case scenario 1 (n=35)
  - Pneumothorax
  - Sigmoid diverticulitis
- Case scenario 2 (n=35)
  - Mesenteric ischemia (easy)
  - Sigmoid diverticulitis
- Case scenario 3 (n=35)
  - Pneumothorax
  - Mesenteric ischemia (easy)
- Case scenario 4 (n=35)
  - Mesenteric ischemia (easy)
  - Mesenteric ischemia (difficult)

Impact on Declarative Knowledge

Students gain in declarative knowledge was determined by asking 20 multiple choice questions before and immediately after working with EMERGE. Influence of preexisting knowledge (ie, concordance validity) was measured by subgroup analysis with regard to study year.

Impact on Procedural Knowledge

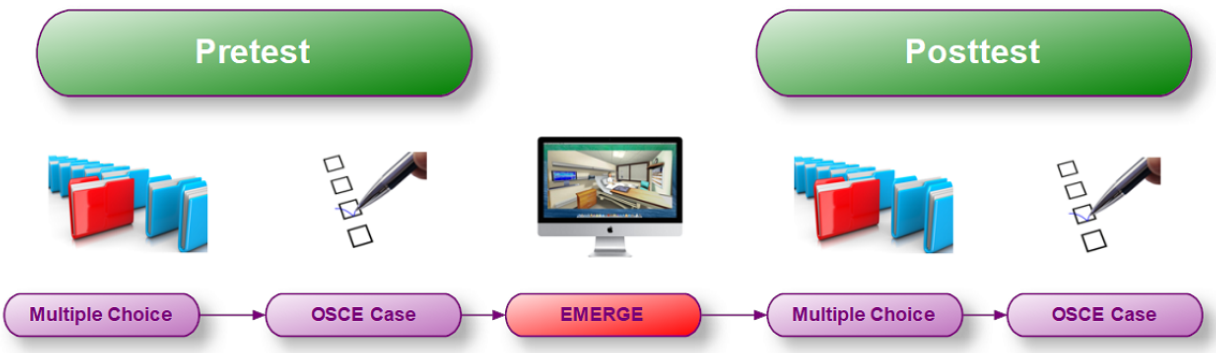
Students' gain in procedural knowledge was measured by presenting students with a modified clinical case from OSCE describing a patient with sigmoid diverticulitis. This disease was intentionally selected for this analysis. Based on our own personal experience as OSCE examiners at our university, this case was the most complex of all the vignettes. Because the study lasted several weeks, it was expected that participants would exchange knowledge and experience. In order not to bias participants toward sigmoid diverticulitis, only half of the students playing EMERGE were presented with a patient with sigmoid diverticulitis in the game. In this subgroup, we were able to measure the effect of treating a patient with sigmoid diverticulitis on procedural knowledge. Time to read the case was not limited. After students read the case, they were asked the following six questions:

1. Please list the five most likely potential diagnoses for the patient.
2. What additional anamnestic questions would you ask the patient?
3. What procedures would you order to confirm your diagnosis and in what order?
4. How would you treat perforated sigmoid diverticulitis?
5. How would you treat nonperforated sigmoid diverticulitis?
6. How would you treat appendicitis?

Students had to write down their answers. Answers were compared to a blueprint created by two expert physicians (RK and SC) based on current medical guidelines and scored accordingly. Answers were scored by FT. Critical cases were discussed among all three authors (RK, SC, and FT) and resolved. Interrater reliability was not calculated.

An overview of the experimental set-up can be seen in Figure 2. Pretest and posttest multiple choice questions and OSCE case were identical before and after EMERGE.

Figure 2. Testing declarative and procedural knowledge before and after working with EMERGE.



XSL•FO
RenderX

Students' Impressions of EMERGE

Students also rated 10 statements to measure three different aspects of their experience using EMERGE: (1) overall impression of EMERGE, (2) usability of EMERGE, and (3) student attitudes toward e-learning and computers. These 10 items had been used in a previous study on a Web-based immersive patient simulator [22]. Students rated these aspects on a 6-point Likert scale ranging from 1 (fully agree) to 6 (fully disagree). The overall impression of EMERGE was measured using the following statements: "Using EMERGE is fun," "EMERGE teaches new knowledge," "EMERGE prepares me for clinical practice," "I would use EMERGE," and "My overall impression of EMERGE."

The usability of EMERGE was measured using the following statements: "EMERGE is easy to learn" and "EMERGE is easy to use."

Student attitudes toward e-learning and computers were measured using the following statements: "I use computers on a daily basis," "Computers, consoles, and cell phones are my hobby," and "I mostly learn with books" (reversed item).

Data Analysis

To assess students' gain in declarative knowledge, students were presented with 10 multiple choice questions per clinical case. Because each student was presented with two clinical cases, students answered a total of 20 multiple choice questions. Students completed the same 20 questions before and after playing EMERGE. For each student, we calculated the percentage of questions they answered correctly. The percentage of correctly answered questions was analyzed in a mixed ANOVA. Effect sizes for ANOVAs are given as partial eta squared (η^2). To determine the sample size for the study, a statistical power analysis was performed. This statistical power analysis was not based on data from prior studies but on general considerations about the trade-offs between the ability to detect certain effects and the feasibility to acquire a sufficiently large sample. Given a specified effect size (Cohen *d*), power, and alpha, the sample size was calculated using GPower (GPower 3.1). Because the implementation of new teaching methods can be expensive and time-consuming, potential new teaching methods should have a sufficiently large benefit. However, promising new teaching methods should not be overlooked. As a compromise, our study needed to be sufficiently powered to detect medium-sized effects with a Cohen *d* of 0.3 for the within-group comparisons. With an alpha=.05 and power=.80, the projected sample size needed to detect an effect of Cohen *d* of 0.3 for the within-group comparisons was N=90 (GPower 3.1). With an alpha=.05 and power=.80, the projected sample size needed to detect a large effect (Cohen *d* of 0.5) for the between-group comparisons was N=64 per group (GPower 3.1).

To assess students' gain in procedural knowledge, we presented students with a clinical vignette (sigmoid diverticulitis) and asked them six questions about the vignette. Students provided their answers in written form. Because only half the students playing EMERGE were presented with a patient with sigmoid diverticulitis in the game, we were able to measure the effect of treating a patient with sigmoid diverticulitis on procedural knowledge.

Students' answers to the first question were graded as correct if they had listed the correct diagnosis among the top three diagnoses. The gain in procedural knowledge was assessed by comparing the number of students who listed the correct diagnosis among the top three diagnoses *before* playing EMERGE to the number of students who listed the correct diagnosis among the top three diagnoses *after* playing EMERGE. The number of students before and after playing EMERGE were compared using generalized estimating equations (GEEs).

In the second question the number of diagnostic questions asked before and after playing EMERGE was analyzed using a mixed ANOVA.

Students' answers to the third question were graded as correct if they had listed all diagnostic procedures in the correct order. Correct answers before and after playing EMERGE were compared using GEEs.

Students' answers to the fourth, fifth, and sixth questions were graded as correct if they provided the correct treatment for each condition. Correct answers before and after playing EMERGE were compared using GEEs.

For all correlational analyses, Kendall tau (τ) was used as a robust measure of correlation. Data were analyzed using SPSS version 25 (IBM Corp, Armonk, NY, USA).

Results

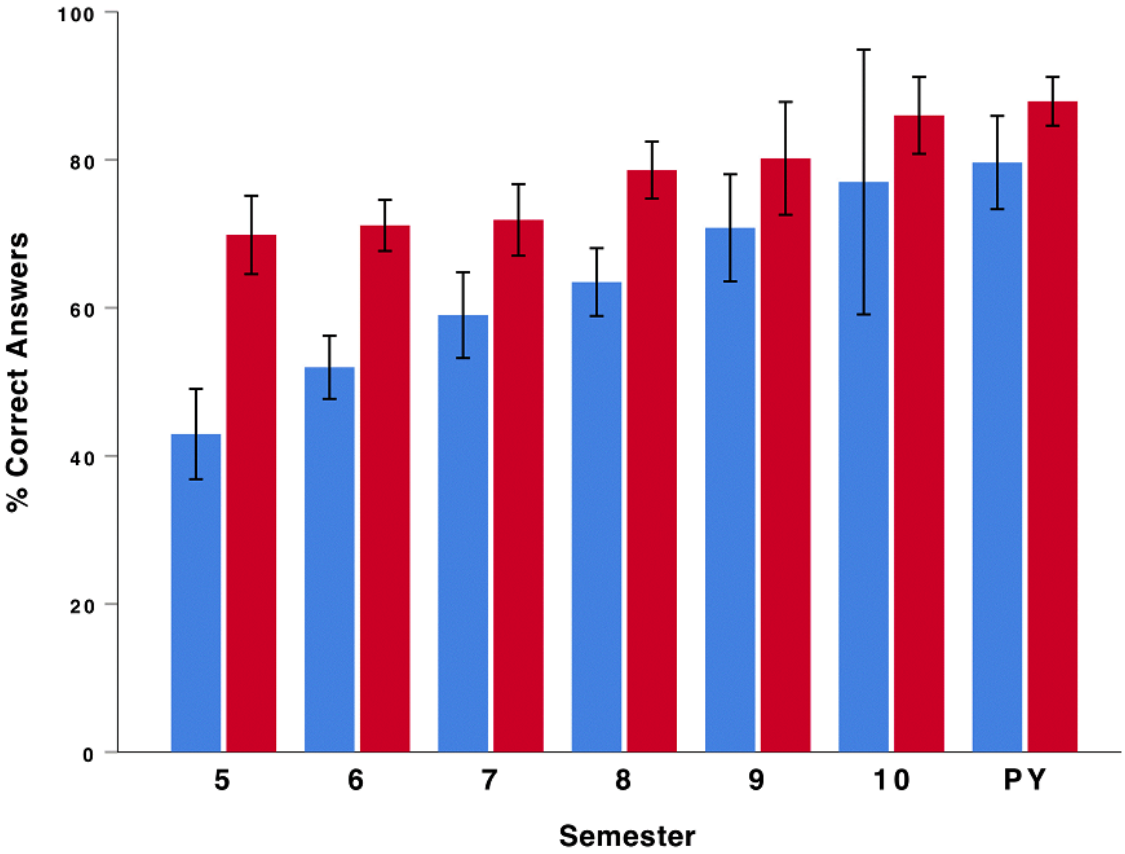
Knowledge Gain: Impact on Declarative Knowledge

Working with EMERGE showed a positive impact on declarative knowledge. The percentage of correct answers to multiple choice questions increased from before (mean 60.4, SD 16.6) to after (mean 76.0, SD 11.6) playing EMERGE (t_{139}=–13.92, P<.001, d=1.25).

To test whether declarative knowledge differed between students in lower or higher semesters, we conducted a 2×7 mixed ANOVA (time×semester) as an exploratory analysis. There was a significant main effect of time on the percentage of correct answers ($F_{1,133}$=130.67, P<.001, partial η^2=.496). This suggests that participants answered significantly more questions correctly after playing EMERGE compared to before playing. There was also a significant main effect of semester ($F_{6,133}$=4.76, P<.001, partial η^2=.177), which suggests that students in higher semesters answered significantly more questions correctly than students in lower semesters. There was also a significant interaction effect between time and semester ($F_{6,133}$=18.36, P<.001, partial η^2=.453), which suggests that the knowledge gain after playing EMERGE was larger for students in lower semesters (see Figure 3). This was further supported by a negative significant correlation between knowledge gain (percentage of correct answers after playing EMERGE minus percentage of correct answers before playing EMERGE) and semester (Kendall τ_{140}=–0.298, P<.001).

XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 3. Percentage of correct answers by semester before (blue) and after (red) playing EMERGE. Error bars represent 95% confidence interval of the mean. PY: practical year (11th and 12th semester).



Knowledge Gain: Impact on Procedural Knowledge

Students' gain in diagnostic accuracy was analyzed using GEEs in a 2×2 design (time×sigmoid case). There were no significant effects (all Wald χ^2_1 <1.4). For descriptive results, see Table 2.

To test whether there was a gain in procedural knowledge, we compared the number of diagnostic questions asked in the sigmoid diverticulitis case before and after playing EMERGE in a 2×2 mixed ANOVA (time×sigmoid case). There was a significant main effect for time ($F_{1,138}$=20.20, P<.001, partial η^2=.128). All other effects were not significant (all F<.775). This suggests that students asked significantly more diagnostic questions after playing EMERGE (mean 3.11, SD 1.65) compared to before (mean 2.42, SD 1.38), regardless of whether they had been presented with a sigmoid diverticulitis case in the game or not.

To test whether the order of correct diagnostic procedures improved after playing EMERGE, we conducted an analysis using GEEs in a 2×2 design (time×sigmoid case). There was a significant main effect of time (beta=–2.54, Wald χ^2_1 =13.5, P<.001). All other effects were not significant (all Wald χ^2_1<2.8). This suggests that more students chose the correct diagnostic pathway after playing EMERGE (33/140, 23.6%) compared to before playing EMERGE (7/140, 5.0%), regardless of whether they had been presented with a sigmoid diverticulitis case in the game or not.

To test whether the treatment suggestions for the perforated sigmoid diverticulitis case improved after playing EMERGE, we conducted an analysis using GEEs in a 2×2 design (time×sigmoid case). There were no significant main or interaction effects (all Wald χ^2_1<0.9). For descriptive results, see Table 2.

To test whether the treatment suggestions for the nonperforated sigmoid diverticulitis case improved after playing EMERGE, we conducted an analysis using GEEs in a 2×2 design (time×sigmoid case). There was a significant effect of time (beta=–2.88, Wald χ^2_1=21.8 P<.001). There was also a significant effect of sigmoid case (beta=–2.46, Wald χ^2_1=14.7, P<.001). There was also a significant interaction effect (beta=2.51, Wald χ^2_1=14.5, P<.001). To break down this interaction effect, chi-square tests were performed. A significantly larger proportion of students who had been presented with a sigmoid case in EMERGE, 67 of 70 participants (96%), provided correct treatment suggestions after playing EMERGE than students who had not been presented with a sigmoid case, 46 of 70 participants (66%; χ^2_1=20.2, P<.001). There was no significant difference between both groups before playing EMERGE (χ^2_1=0.0, P=.87).

XSL•FO
RenderX

Table 2. Descriptive results of Objective Structured Clinical Examination before and after playing EMERGE for students presented and not presented a sigmoid diverticulitis case while playing EMERGE.

Questions	Before playing EMERGE, n (%)		After playing EMERGE, n (%)	
	No sigmoid case (n=70)	Sigmoid case (n=70)	No sigmoid case (n=70)	Sigmoid case (n=70)
Correct diagnosis	61 (87)	65 (93)	62 (89)	66 (94)
Correct diagnostic procedures	5 (7)	2 (3)	14 (20)	19 (27)
Correct treatment of perforated sigmoid diverticulitis	66 (94)	67 (96)	70 (100)	69 (99)
Correct treatment of nonperforated sigmoid diverticulitis	40 (57)	39 (56)	46 (66)	67 (96)
Correct treatment of appendicitis	67 (96)	66 (94)	68 (97)	67 (96)

Table 3. Mean ratings of the experience of using EMERGE (1=fully agree to 6=fully disagree).

Items	Mean (SD)
Using EMERGE is fun	1.68 (0.84)
EMERGE teaches new knowledge	1.98 (0.96)
EMERGE prepares me for clinical practice	1.95 (0.98)
I would use EMERGE regularly	2.22 (1.18)
My overall impression of EMERGE	1.91 (0.69)
EMERGE is easy to learn	1.61 (0.89)
EMERGE is easy to use	1.64 (0.91)
I use computers on a daily basis	1.63 (1.25)
Computers, consoles, and cell phones are my hobby	2.86 (1.52)
I mostly learn with books	3.49 (1.32)

Table 4. Correlations (Kendall tau) between semester and mean ratings of EMERGE.

Variables	Overall impression of EMERGE		Usability of EMERGE		Attitudes toward e-learning	
	Tau	*P* value	Tau	*P* value	Tau	*P* value
Semester	0.195	.002	0.058	.40	–0.091	.16
Overall impression of EMERGE			0.218	.001	0.122	.05
Usability of EMERGE					0.122	.07

To test whether the treatment suggestions for the appendicitis case improved after playing EMERGE, we conducted an analysis using GEEs in a 2×2 design (time×sigmoid case). There were no significant main or interaction effects (all Wald χ^2_1<0.2), which suggests that there was no difference in the proportion of students who listed the correct treatment for appendicitis before (133/140, 95.0%) and after (135/140, 96.4%) playing EMERGE.

Impression Ratings of EMERGE

Students rated their overall impression of EMERGE (Cronbach alpha=.805; mean 1.95, SD 0.71) the usability of EMERGE (Cronbach alpha=.851; mean 1.62, SD 0.84), and their attitude toward e-learning (Cronbach alpha=.518; mean 2.66, SD 0.98). Table 3 shows the mean ratings of the students' impressions of EMERGE. As Table 4 shows, there was a significant correlation between semester and overall impression of EMERGE, indicating that students in lower semesters had a more positive impression of EMERGE than students in higher semesters. There was also a significant correlation between the overall impression of EMERGE and the perceived usability of EMERGE.

Discussion

The main goal of this study was to test EMERGE as an educational tool and to determine its effect on student motivation and knowledge gain. A pretest-posttest comparison yielded a significant increase in declarative knowledge. An exploratory analysis showed that this increase in declarative knowledge was smaller in more advanced students. With regard to procedural knowledge, a significant effect was noted for one of six categories, and this effect was only present in students who had actually been exposed to the respective case while playing the

XSL•FO
RenderX

game. Only students that worked with the perforated sigmoid diverticulitis case also showed an increase in performance in the OSCE questions about nonperforated sigmoid diverticulitis, which is a sign for positive concordance validity [26].

There are several potential shortcomings that limit the generalizability of the results. For instance, the results may be influenced by the fact that participation in this study was on a voluntary basis and included mainly motivated students. Because motivated students are more likely to participate in experiments [27], future studies should investigate if less motivated students could also benefit from playing EMERGE. One way to study EMERGE's effects on both motivated and less motivated students would be to integrate EMERGE into the regular curriculum.

Another limitation of our study is the fact that we did not study any long-term effects. Because our study focused only on a single intervention, future studies are needed to investigate if the effects of playing EMERGE can also be found after a longer period of time.

Also, we cannot disentangle the effects of EMERGE and other curricular activities because this was not a randomized controlled trial. It is important to note that the surgical curriculum is spread out over several semesters. Therefore, it is possible that some of the participants may have been exposed to some of the clinical conditions included in this study. However, because we did find a positive effect of playing EMERGE on knowledge gain, prior exposure was not strong enough to cancel out all potential learning effects.

For this study, case scenarios were limited to three diseases. Although students playing EMERGE did show an increase in declarative and—to a lesser extent—procedural knowledge, this was only true for the four clinical vignettes included in the study and procedural knowledge was only assessed in relation to one condition (ie, sigmoid diverticulitis). Thus, future studies should include a wider range of clinical cases.

However, it is important to identify the effect that leads to the knowledge gain. First, because this study lacks a control group, it is not clear what part of the knowledge gain can be attributed to playing EMERGE and what part is due to testing effects (ie, a gain in test scores because of familiarity with the questions). Second, at the end of the game students were debriefed by a virtual doctor who informed them about the correct diagnosis, so we cannot untangle the effect of playing EMERGE and the debriefing on knowledge gain.

Overall, students' impression of EMERGE was positive. However, students in lower semesters had a more positive impression of EMERGE than students in higher semesters. Future studies should include more detailed measures of students' impressions to further unentangle which groups of students are most likely to benefit from using EMERGE.

Beneath technical feasibility, curricular content of serious games plays a crucial role. Prior research on the impact of serious games on knowledge gain has been mixed—especially with regard to different levels of pedagogical strategies [15]. Therefore, using a third-party game in the curriculum may be risky because combining established pedagogical strategies with those used in serious games may be challenging. Hence, clinical teachers must adapt the cases in the game to their own curriculum to get a positive effect on knowledge gain.

Several prior studies have also shown positive effects of training with virtual patient simulators. For instance, Haubruck et al [28] showed that students who trained in chest tube insertions with the app Touch Surgery performed better than students who trained an unrelated skill. Additionally, Kowalewski et al [29] showed that virtual patient simulators have face and content validity. Also, Schwarz et al [30] showed that students generally have positive attitudes toward virtual platforms that train adaptive algorithms.

EMERGE shares certain features with immersive patient simulators [21]. However, it offers a higher degree of immersion because it expands on immersive patient simulators by adding features found in modern computer games, such as a high-fidelity game environment and the challenge of treating several patients in a limited amount of time. This opens the possibility of teaching nontechnical skills that are important in high-risk environments, such as the emergency department [22], but are hard to develop in an academic setting.

Lastly, working with EMERGE was widely accepted among students and was rated to be highly enjoyable by the students, which is an important precursor for motivated learning. Although this finding is commonly reported when evaluating serious games [31], it is still an important finding because, in addition to considerations of validity, creating enjoyable and motivating teaching interventions may be a goal in and of itself.

In this nonrandomized trial, we found significant gains in declarative and procedural knowledge in students self-selecting to use a serious game. Future studies need to determine whether this gain is attributable to the game itself.

Acknowledgments

We would like to thank Ms Claire Cahm for proofreading and Mr Juan Soriano Nunez for overseeing the experiment.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

References

1. Riedel WJ, Blokland A. Declarative memory. Handb Exp Pharmacol 2015;228:215-236. [doi: 10.1007/978-3-319-16522-6_7] [Medline: 25977084]

XSL•FO
RenderX

2. Jayakumar N, Brunckhorst O, Dasgupta P, Khan MS, Ahmed K. e-Learning in surgical education: a systematic review. J Surg Educ 2015;72(6):1145-1157. [doi: 10.1016/j.jsurg.2015.05.008] [Medline: 26111822]
3. Fleiszer D, Hoover ML, Posel N, Razek T, Bergman S. Development and validation of a tool to evaluate the evolution of clinical reasoning in trauma using virtual patients. J Surg Educ 2018 May;75(3):779-786. [doi: 10.1016/j.jsurg.2017.08.024] [Medline: 28927667]
4. Chon S, Hilgers S, Timmermann F, Dratsch T, Plum PS, Berlth F, et al. Web-based immersive patient simulator as a curricular tool for objective structured clinical examination preparation in surgery: development and evaluation. JMIR Serious Games 2018 Jul 04;6(3):e10693 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/10693] [Medline: 29973333]
5. Breckwoldt J, Ludwig JR, Plener J, Schröder T, Gruber H, Peters H. Differences in procedural knowledge after a "spaced" and a "massed" version of an intensive course in emergency medicine, investigating a very short spacing interval. BMC Med Educ 2016 Sep 26;16(1):249 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1186/s12909-016-0770-6] [Medline: 27670782]
6. Drummond D, Delval P, Abdenouri S, Truchot J, Ceccaldi P, Plaisance P, et al. Serious game versus online course for pretraining medical students before a simulation-based mastery learning course on cardiopulmonary resuscitation: A randomised controlled study. Eur J Anaesthesiol 2017 Dec;34(12):836-844. [doi: 10.1097/EJA.0000000000000675] [Medline: 28731928]
7. Graafland M, Schraagen JM, Schijven MP. Systematic review of serious games for medical education and surgical skills training. Br J Surg 2012 Oct;99(10):1322-1330. [doi: 10.1002/bjs.8819] [Medline: 22961509]
8. Knight JF, Carley S, Tregunna B, Jarvis S, Smithies R, de Freitas S, et al. Serious gaming technology in major incident triage training: a pragmatic controlled trial. Resuscitation 2010 Sep;81(9):1175-1179. [doi: 10.1016/j.resuscitation.2010.03.042] [Medline: 20732609]
9. Kleinert R, Wahba R, Chang D, Plum P, Hölscher AH, Stippel DL. 3D immersive patient simulators and their impact on learning success: a thematic review. J Med Internet Res 2015 Apr 08;17(4):e91 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/jmir.3492] [Medline: 25858862]
10. Gutiérrez F, Pierce J, Vergara VM, Coulter R, Saland L, Caudell TP, et al. The effect of degree of immersion upon learning performance in virtual reality simulations for medical education. Stud Health Technol Inform 2007;125:155-160. [Medline: 17377256]
11. Dankbaar M. Serious games and blended learning; effects on performance and motivation in medical education. Perspect Med Educ 2017 Feb;6(1):58-60 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1007/s40037-016-0320-2] [Medline: 27975195]
12. Lemoine ER, Nassim JS, Rana J, Burgin S. Teaching & learning tips 4: motivation and emotion in learning. Int J Dermatol 2018 Feb;57(2):233-236. [doi: 10.1111/ijd.13715] [Medline: 29330931]
13. Desurvire H, El-Nasr MS. Methods for game user research: studying player behavior to enhance game design. IEEE Comput Graph Appl 2013 Jul;33(4):82-87. [doi: 10.1109/MCG.2013.61] [Medline: 24808062]
14. Kätsyri J, Hari R, Ravaja N, Nummenmaa L. Just watching the game ain't enough: striatal fMRI reward responses to successes and failures in a video game during active and vicarious playing. Front Hum Neurosci 2013;7:278 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.3389/fnhum.2013.00278] [Medline: 23781195]
15. Gorbanev I, Agudelo-Londoño S, González RA, Cortes A, Pomares A, Delgadillo V, et al. A systematic review of serious games in medical education: quality of evidence and pedagogical strategy. Med Educ Online 2018 Dec;23(1):1438718 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1080/10872981.2018.1438718] [Medline: 29457760]
16. Kleinert R, Heiermann N, Wahba R, Chang D, Hölscher AH, Stippel DL. Design, realization, and first validation of an immersive web-based virtual patient simulator for training clinical decisions in surgery. J Surg Educ 2015;72(6):1131-1138. [doi: 10.1016/j.jsurg.2015.05.009] [Medline: 26094909]
17. Dev P, Heinrichs W, Youngblood P. CliniSpace: a multiperson 3D online immersive training environment accessible through a browser. Stud Health Technol Inform 2011;163:173-179. [doi: 10.3233/978-1-60750-706-2-173]
18. Middeke A, Anders S, Schuelper M, Raupach T, Schuelper N. Training of clinical reasoning with a Serious Game versus small-group problem-based learning: a prospective study. PLoS ONE 2018 Sep 11;13(9):e0203851. [doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0203851]
19. EmergeGameClient. URL: http://elearning.uke.de/HOOU/EFEWebGLCrunching/ [accessed 2019-02-26] [WebCite Cache ID 76TWxrjMQ]
20. Kleinert R, Fuchs C, Romotzky V, Knepper L, Wasilewski M, Schröder W, et al. Generation Y and surgical residency: passing the baton or the end of the world as we know it? Results from a survey among medical students in Germany. PLoS ONE 2017 Nov 27;12(11):e0188114. [doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0188114]
21. Kadmon M, Bender M, Adili F, Arbab D, Heinemann M, Hofmann H, et al. Kompetenzorientierung in der medizinischen Ausbildung. Chirurg 2013 Mar 15;84(4):277-285. [doi: 10.1007/s00104-012-2449-9]
22. Kleinert R, Heiermann N, Plum PS, Wahba R, Chang D, Maus M, et al. Web-based immersive virtual patient simulators: positive effect on clinical reasoning in medical education. J Med Internet Res 2015 Nov 17;17(11):e263 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/jmir.5035] [Medline: 26577020]
23. Galetin T, Galetin A, Vestweber K, Rink AD. Systematic review and comparison of national and international guidelines on diverticular disease. Int J Colorectal Dis 2018 Jan 18;33(3):261-272. [doi: 10.1007/s00384-017-2960-z]

XSL•FO
RenderX

24. Tilsed JVT, Casamassima A, Kurihara H, Mariani D, Martinez I, Pereira J, et al. ESTES guidelines: acute mesenteric ischaemia. Eur J Trauma Emerg Surg 2016 Jan 28;42(2):253-270. [doi: 10.1007/s00068-016-0634-0]
25. Yoon J, Sivakumar P, O'Kane K, Ahmed L. A need to reconsider guidelines on management of primary spontaneous pneumothorax? Int J Emerg Med 2017 Feb 21;10(1). [doi: 10.1186/s12245-017-0135-x]
26. Cohen D, Sevdalis N, Patel V, Taylor M, Lee H, Vokes M, et al. Tactical and operational response to major incidents: feasibility and reliability of skills assessment using novel virtual environments. Resuscitation 2013 Jul;84(7):992-998. [doi: 10.1016/j.resuscitation.2012.12.011]
27. Aoun Bahous S, Salameh P, Salloum A, Salameh W, Park YS, Tekian A. Voluntary vs. compulsory student evaluation of clerkships: effect on validity and potential bias. BMC Med Educ 2018 Jan 5;18(1):9. [doi: 10.1186/s12909-017-1116-8]
28. Haubruck P, Nickel F, Ober J, Walker T, Bergdolt C, Friedrich M, et al. Evaluation of app-based serious gaming as a training method in teaching chest tube insertion to medical students: randomized controlled trial. J Med Internet Res 2018 May 21;20(5):e195. [doi: 10.2196/jmir.9956]
29. Kowalewski K, Hendrie JD, Schmidt MW, Proctor T, Paul S, Garrow CR, et al. Validation of the mobile serious game application Touch Surgery™ for cognitive training and assessment of laparoscopic cholecystectomy. Surg Endosc 2017 Oct;31(10):4058-4066. [doi: 10.1007/s00464-017-5452-x] [Medline: 28281111]
30. Schwarz D, Štourač P, Komenda M, Harazim H, Kosinová M, Gregor J, et al. Interactive algorithms for teaching and learning acute medicine in the network of medical faculties MEFANET. J Med Internet Res 2013 Jul;15(7):e135 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/jmir.2590] [Medline: 23835586]
31. Baars M, Wijnia L, Paas F. The association between motivation, affect, and self-regulated learning when solving problems. Front Psychol 2017 Aug;8:1346 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.3389/fpsyg.2017.01346] [Medline: 28848467]

Abbreviations

GEE: generalized estimating equation
OSCE: Objective Structured Clinical Examination

Edited by G Eysenbach; submitted 06.12.18; peer-reviewed by K Glover, S Jacklin, F Nickel, S Sullivan, J Kiesewetter, P Stourac; comments to author 05.01.19; revised version received 21.01.19; accepted 17.02.19; published 05.03.19.

Please cite as:
Chon SH, Timmermann F, Dratsch T, Schuelper N, Plum P, Berlth F, Datta RR, Schramm C, Haneder S, Späth MR, Dübbers M, Kleinert J, Raupach T, Bruns C, Kleinert R
Serious Games in Surgical Medical Education: A Virtual Emergency Department as a Tool for Teaching Clinical Reasoning to Medical Students
JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e13028
URL: http://games.jmir.org/2019/1/e13028/
doi:10.2196/13028
PMID:30835239

©Seung-Hun Chon, Ferdinand Timmermann, Thomas Dratsch, Nikolai Schuelper, Patrick Plum, Felix Berlth, Rabi Raj Datta, Christoph Schramm, Stefan Haneder, Martin Richard Späth, Martin Dübbers, Julia Kleinert, Tobias Raupach, Christiane Bruns, Robert Kleinert. Originally published in JMIR Serious Games (http://games.jmir.org), 05.03.2019. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR Serious Games, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://games.jmir.org, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Original Paper

Energy Expenditure and Enjoyment During Active Video Gaming Using an Adapted Wii Fit Balance Board in Adults with Physical Disabilities: Observational Study

Laurie A Malone[1], PhD, FACSM; Mohanraj Thirumalai[1], PhD; Sangeetha Padalabalanarayanan[1], MS; Whitney N Neal[1], MA, CHES; Sean Bowman[1], MPH; Tapan Mehta[1], PhD

University of Alabama at Birmingham/Lakeshore Foundation Research Collaborative, Birmingham, AL, United States

Corresponding Author:
Laurie A Malone, PhD, FACSM
University of Alabama at Birmingham/Lakeshore Foundation Research Collaborative
1720 2nd Avenue South
Birmingham, AL, 35294-1212
United States
Phone: 1 205 934 0142
Email: lamalone@uab.edu

Abstract

Background: Individuals with physical disabilities have fewer opportunities to participate in enjoyable physical activity. One option for increasing physical activity is playing active video games (AVGs); however, many AVGs are inaccessible or offer limited play options.

Objective: This study aimed to examine energy expenditure and enjoyment in adults with mobility impairment during AVG play using off-the-shelf (OTS) and adapted versions of the Wii Fit balance board (Nintendo).

Methods: During visit 1, participants completed a functional assessment and the familiarization period. During visit 2, metabolic data were collected during a 20-minute baseline and four 10-minute bouts of Wii Fit Plus game play, with two bouts on each of the boards. During the resting period, participants completed the Physical Activity Enjoyment Scale (PACES). Statistical analyses were computed using SPSS software. Data were analyzed separately for individuals who were able to play while standing on both boards (StdStd); those who could not play while standing on the OTS board, but were able to play while standing on the adapted board (aStd); and those who could only play while sitting on the adapted board (aSit).

Results: Data were collected for 58 participants (StdStd, n=17; aStd, n=10; aSit, n=31). The sample included 31 men and 27 women with a mean age of 41.21 (SD 12.70) years. Energy expenditure (metabolic equivalent [MET]) during game play was significantly greater than that during rest for all players. Only 17 participants (StdStd group) were able to play using the OTS board. During game play on the adapted board, the average MET values for the two game sets were 2.261 (SD 0.718) kcal/kg/hour and 2.233 (SD 0.751) kcal/kg/hour for the aSit group, 3.151 (SD 1.034) and 2.990 (SD 1.121) for the aStd group, and 2.732 (SD 0.655) and 2.777 (SD 0.803) for the StdStd group. For game play on the adapted board, self-reported ratings of perceived exertion on a 0-10 scale suggested greater exercise intensity levels, with median scores ranging from moderate (3) to very hard (7). The PACES scores indicated that all players enjoyed using the adapted board, with a median score of 4 on a 5-point scale.

Conclusions: The adapted Wii Fit balance board provided an opportunity for individuals with mobility impairments, including wheelchair users, to engage in AVG. All participants were able to utilize the adapted controller and enjoyed the AVG activity. Although the average MET values achieved during AVG represented light-intensity exercise (<3 METs), 16% of sitting participants and 41% of standing participants achieved moderate-intensity exercise (3-6 METs) in at least one of the games. Factors not accounted for, which may have influenced the intensity of exercise, include game selection, limited familiarization period, and discomfort wearing the COSMED portable metabolic system for measurement of oxygen consumption. Accessible AVG controllers offer an innovative approach to overcome various barriers to participation in physical activity. The next steps include assessment of an AVG intervention using an adapted board gaming controller on health and fitness outcomes.

Trial Registration: ClinicalTrials.gov NCT02994199; https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02994199 (Archived by Webcite at http://www.webcitation.org/75fc0mN39).

(JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e11326) doi:10.2196/11326

XSL•FO
RenderX

KEYWORDS

exergaming; video games; exercise; physical activity; disability; energy expenditure; enjoyment

Introduction

Physical inactivity is significantly higher in people with disabilities due to fewer opportunities and countless barriers to engaging in leisure-time physical activity [1-7]. Lack of transportation, inaccessible fitness facilities, absence of staff trained to work with people with disabilities, and boredom associated with the use of standard exercise equipment contribute to higher sedentary behaviors in this population [1-7]. Replacing sedentary behaviors with active video games (AVGs) holds promise as a way to reduce those barriers and increase leisure-time physical activity in people with disabilities [8-12]. Moreover, AVGs have the potential to be a "gateway experience" to physical activity, suggesting that such games may open the door to interest and participation in other forms of physical activity for persons with disabilities [10].

AVGs, also called "exergames," are video games that require actions of large body parts (like the trunk or upper or lower extremity) or the whole body to control game play as opposed to games that only require hand or finger movements to play. Gaming systems that have AVG capability include the Nintendo Wii, Sony PlayStation Move, and Microsoft Xbox Kinect. Depending on the design of games and control systems used, AVGs have been shown to be an enjoyable leisure-time physical activity option to replace sedentary screen time [13-17], with the potential to increase cardiorespiratory fitness and enhance balance and functional mobility [15,16,18-28]. Furthermore, AVGs show promise as an enjoyable physical activity alternative for individuals with disabilities, largely because they overcome certain common barriers to physical activity such as transportation and access to adequate facilities [10,11].

It is important to determine whether the level of physical activity offered by AVGs is high enough to achieve the same fitness and health benefits offered by traditional exercise. Several studies have reported that increases in energy expenditure are sufficient for maintaining and improving health in individuals with mobility impairments such as cerebral palsy [12,29-32], spinal cord injury [33,34], and stroke [29,35-37]. A literature review by Deutsch and colleagues [29] sought to determine whether evidence existed to support the use of video games for the promotion of fitness and wellness for adults after stroke (moderate severity) and those with cerebral palsy (mild severity). It was found that both groups were able to achieve moderate energy expenditure by playing Nintendo Wii, Sony Playstation, and Xbox Kinect games. In another study by Hurkmans et al [31], adults with cerebral palsy who were able to stand without support were asked to play Wii Sports tennis and boxing while their energy expenditure was measured using a portable gas analyzer. The results of the study showed that participants achieved moderate-intensity exercise during both games. A similar study by Robert et al [32] evaluated exercise intensity in children with cerebral palsy who were able to stand and children without cerebral palsy. They found similar exercise intensity levels for both groups, suggesting that children with cerebral palsy who are able to play video games while standing can obtain exercise-related benefits that are similar to those obtained by children without cerebral palsy. A systematic review by Mat Rosly et al [33] found that adults with spinal cord injury were able to achieve the recommended moderate-to-vigorous physical activity levels proposed by the American College of Sports Medicine. A case study of two young adults showed that persons with spinal cord injury are able to achieve moderate intensity–level heart rates when playing boxing on the Nintendo Wii while seated [34]. Furthermore, when compared with conventional boxing, Mat Rosly et al [38] found that individuals with spinal cord injury were able to achieve the same moderate-intensity level as that when playing exergame boxing. Another study determined showed poststroke, individuals were able to play Wii tennis and Wii boxing at a moderate-intensity level (classified using the American College of Sports Medicine and the American Heart Association guidelines as 3-6 metabolic equivalents [METs]) [35]. Another study compared the performance of playing Nintendo Wii and Sony Xbox 360 in adults poststroke and individuals without a disability [36]; the study found that AVG game play while standing produced moderate-intensity exercise levels and poststroke participants approached anaerobic metabolism when playing in the sitting position.

Although AVGs hold promise as an opportunity to increase physical activity in people with disabilities, physical limitations such as decreased motor control, range of motion, muscle strength, ambulatory status, and balance limit AVG accessibility for a large portion of this population [10,12,39]. For example, the majority of the studies noted above for individuals with cerebral palsy and poststroke comprised individuals with mild-to-moderate mobility impairments who were able to play the AVGs without adapted equipment. Similarly, limited AVG play options are available for people who are unable to stand, have balance problems or poor motor control, or cannot use their lower body to perform game movements [10]. For instance, floor-pad game controllers used by AVGs (eg, Dance, Dance Revolution and Wii Outdoor Challenge) have obvious accessibility limitations. Although motion-controlled AVGs offer slightly greater access, accelerometer-based hand controllers like those used by the Sony PlayStation Move and Nintendo Wii platforms often require rapid and precise movements for successful play, and AVGs using the camera-based controller of Microsoft Kinect typically require the player to be standing for proper game function. Therefore, AVG adaptations to game controllers are essential in order to offer people with disabilities options for AVGs for moderate-to-vigorous exercise in environments such as their home and communities [11]. Offering adapted controllers for AVG play to people with disabilities is also a necessary first step toward examining the feasibility of such controllers for increasing energy expenditure.

The development of adapted game hardware not only offers an innovative approach to overcoming numerous barriers to exercise in people with disabilities, but also provides an enjoyable form of exercise to this population. Successful

XSL•FO
RenderX

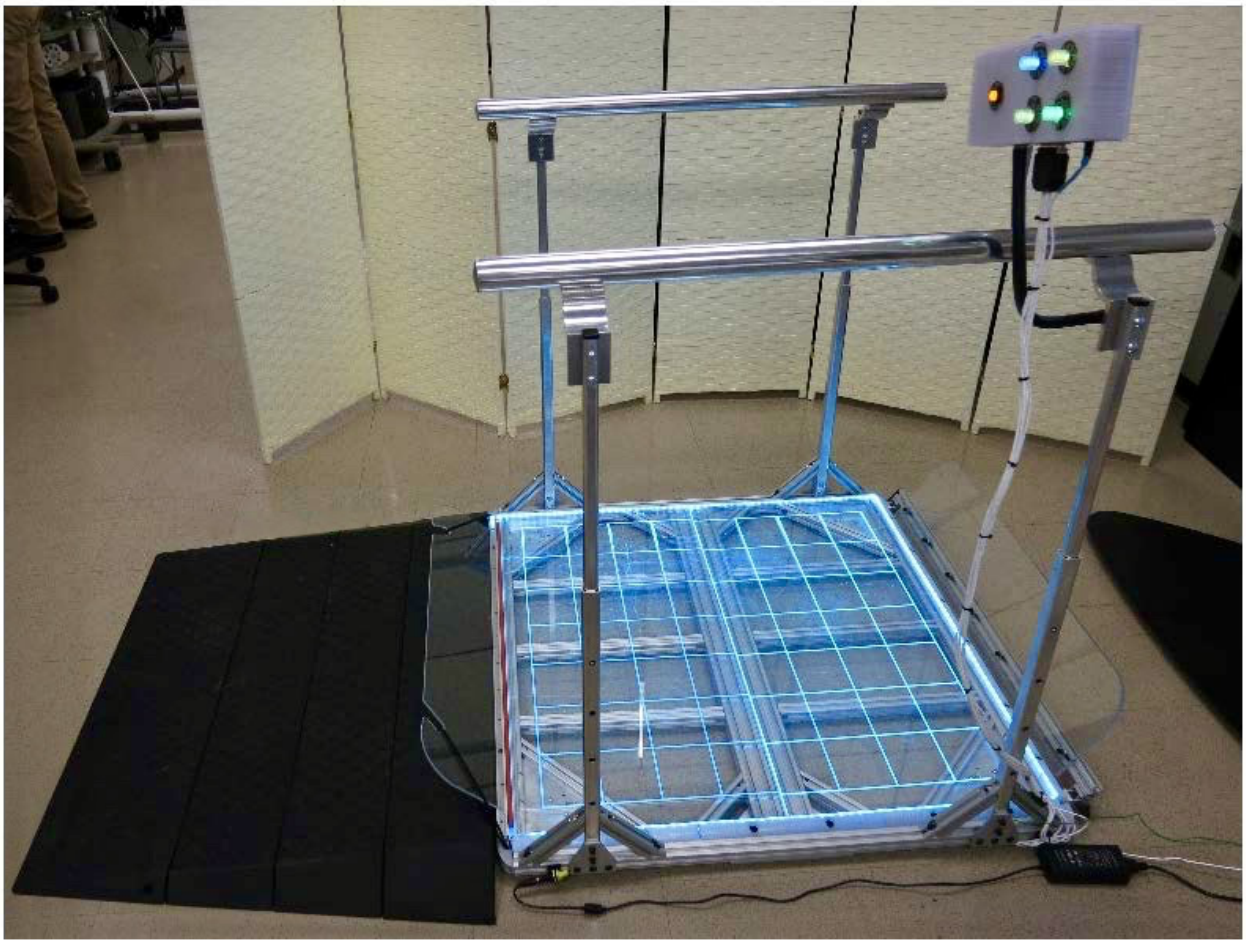
adaptations to game controllers and interfaces that allow people with disabilities to play video games have been developed [40-43]; however, there has been limited research and development efforts focused on improving the accessibility of commercially available gaming controllers for use with AVGs. The Rehabilitation Engineering Research Center on Interactive Exercise Technologies and Exercise Physiology for People with Disabilities at the University of Alabama at Birmingham/ Lakeshore Foundation Research Collaborative examined the accessibility of video game controllers including the Wii Fit balance board system. Data on game play, participants' ability to use the controllers, user feedback, and research staff qualitative observations indicated that the Wii balance board was in need of adaptation for successful game play. These data were fed to the engineering team for development of an adapted gaming balance board.

The primary deficiencies in the balance board included a small platform area (19.5"×12"), the inability to use a stabilization assistive device (ie, walker or cane), and the requirement of a full range of motion for responsive game play. To address these deficiencies and increase accessibility, the balance board was redesigned to feature a much larger platform area (40"×38"), built-in lateral stabilization supports (ie, handrails), and adjustable sensitivity for center of balance support [44]. The adaptations were selected to not only enable wheelchair users to use the balance board, but to make it a universal device with enhanced safety for all users (Figure 1).

Usability of the off-the-shelf (OTS) and adapted balance board controllers was evaluated in individuals with mobility impairments using the System Usability Scale (SUS) [44]. The user-centered design approach resulted in an adapted version of the Wii Fit balance board, which met the needs of a variety of users. Results demonstrated a successful adaptation and increase in usability of the adapted balance board, with the adapted board scoring significantly greater mean SUS scores than those of the off-the-shelf board.

Despite the fact that a variety of successful adaptations to AVG game controllers and interfaces that allow people with disabilities to play AVGs have been developed by rehabilitation engineers and assistive technology specialists, there have been limited research and development efforts focused on measuring energy expenditure. Modifications of these game controllers must be successful in allowing people with disabilities to not only play AVGs, but also achieve levels of energy expenditure that are similar to the levels of people without disabilities.

Figure 1. Adapted Wii Fit balance board with a ramp for wheelchair access, adjustable-height handrails, and control box. Usable space on the adapted balance board measures 91.5 cm x 91.5 cm, with the load cells placed at each of the four corners. The electrical components of the off-the-shelf Wii Fit balance board were reconfigured and integrated into the new form factor and electrical design of the adapted board.



XSL•FO
RenderX

The purpose of this study was to examine energy expenditure and enjoyment in adults with physical disabilities, specifically those with mobility impairments (ie, inability to stand, balance issues, poor motor control, and inability to use lower extremity for game play), during AVG play using OTS and adapted versions of the Wii Fit balance board.

Methods

Design and Setting

The study was conducted in the Exercise and Sport Science Laboratory at Lakeshore Foundation (Birmingham, AL), a community organization that provides physical activity, sport, and recreation opportunities to individuals with physical disability and chronic health conditions (trial registration: ClinicalTrials.gov NCT02994199). For the purposes of this study, participants generally visited the laboratory a total of 3 times within a 3-week period.

Participants

Eligibility criteria included age ≥18 years, a confirmed diagnosis of lower extremity-mobility limitation (eg, spina bifida, cerebral palsy, muscular dystrophy, 1 year after spinal cord injury, multiple sclerosis, stroke, or limb loss) with partial or full use of upper extremities and use of an assistive device (eg, cane, walker, or wheelchair) or problems with gait, balance, or coordination. Participants were excluded if they had an unstable cardiovascular condition, a visual impairment that interfered with playing video games, or weight over 350 lbs (159 kg) including their assistive device.

Procedures

Visit 1

During the first visit, informed consent/assent was obtained, and demographic and health history information was documented. An assessment of each participant's functional ability was conducted as described below. In addition, participants were familiarized with the equipment (K4b2 portable metabolic system, COSMED, Rome, Italy) used for the study and the video games that would be played during subsequent visits. Participants played a portion of or the entire game for all games that were to be used during testing.

For the assessment of physical function during the first visit, each participant performed 18 functional movement tasks from the International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health (ICF) [45,46]. Participants completed each task individually and were scored according to their difficulty in completing the task on a scale of 0 to 4. As defined in the ICF manual, the scoring was as follows: 0, "No difficulty"; 1, "Mild difficulty"; 2, "Moderate difficulty"; 3, "Severe difficulty"; and 4, "Complete difficulty." The specific ICF tasks selected for use in this study were based on a consensus among the research staff about which mobility activities listed in the ICF would potentially be required for AVG play (eg, standing, reaching, throwing, and jumping) based on observations during the pilot testing. Scores on each of the 18 tasks were added together as a composite to represent participant physical function [9]. A lower composite score indicated greater functional ability on the selected tasks.

In addition to the functional assessment, participants also completed a series of questions from the HealthMeasures resources [47], which were used as an assessment of the individual's own perspective regarding their functional ability. Questions were taken from the Patient Reported Outcomes Measurement Information System (PROMIS) [48]. The series comprised questions from PROMIS SFv1.0 Physical Function 20a and PROMIS SFv1.0 Physical Function Samples with Mobility Aid. Questions addressed issues of how difficult a variety of daily tasks (ie, vacuuming, yard work, walking, and bathing) were to complete (5 point scale, "without any difficulty" to "unable to do"; 14 questions), whether their health limited their ability to complete certain activities (ie, carry groceries, strenuous sports, walk a mile; 5 point scale, "not at all" to "cannot do"; 6 questions), and their ability to stand and move with and without support ("yes" or "no," 1 question; 5 point scale, "without any difficulty" to "unable to do", 10 questions).

Active Video Game Play

The second visit consisted of exercise testing during video game play. Upon arrival, participants were set up with the COSMED K4B2 portable metabolic system and a Polar (Kempele, Finland) heart rate monitor to assess pulmonary gas exchange and indirect calorimetry. Data collection began with a 20-minute rest period to measure the resting energy expenditure. For the rest period, participants sat quietly with no speaking or distractions besides light reading of a magazine or viewing their cellular phone. Next, game play began with continued gas exchange and heart rate data collection.

The Nintendo Wii video game console and a video game CD for the Wii Balance Board (Wii Fit Plus, Nintendo) were used for game play. Two game sets were created as outlined in Table 1. Game Set A included Rhythm Kung Fu, Rhythm Parade, Obstacle Course, and Bird's Eye Bull's Eye. Game Set B included Island Cycling, Penguin Slide, Hula Hoop, and Ski Slalom. Selected games were chosen in an effort to provide moderate-level physical activity during game play. Games represented popular genres (eg, fitness, sport, and adventure) and had an Entertainment Software Rating Board score of "E"" (everyone).

Participants first played the two game sets on the OTS gaming board and then played the games on the adapted gaming board. The order of the game sets (Set A and Set B) played was randomly assigned to the participant. Each game set was played for 10 minutes with a rest period of 5 minutes afterward [9].

XSL•FO
RenderX

Table 1. Description of each game played using the off-the-shelf and adapted balance board.

Mini game	Description
Wii Fit Plus: Game Set A	
Rhythm Kung Fu	The participant follows the Kung Fu movements of Mii characters in time with the rhythm. Movements include left and right punches, two hand punches, and left and right kicks.
Rhythm Parade	The participant marches in place to the rhythm of the parade while directing the parade with arm movements in coordination with the game.
Obstacle Course	The participant marches in place to run the character through an obstacle course of swinging balls, moving platforms, and jumps.
Bird's-Eye Bull's-Eye	The participant flaps their arms and moves their body to fly through the course landing on targets spread across the map.
Wii Fit Plus: Game Set B	
Island Cycling	The participant marches in place on the board to pedal the bike while capturing flags that are spread throughout the island.
Penguin Slide	The participant catches fish by leaning left and right on the balance board to control the Mii.
Hula Hoop	The participant rotates their trunk/hips in a circular motion on the board to control the Mii hula hooping.
Ski Slalom	The participant skis down the slope by leaning left and right to control the Mii skier's course.

At the end of each game set, participants provided a rating of perceived exertion (RPE) on a scale of 0-10, with 0 indicating "Not Tired at All" to 10 indicating "Very, Very Tired." During the rest periods, participants completed a feedback survey that included the Physical Activity Enjoyment Scale (PACES) [49]. PACES includes 16 statements such as "I enjoyed it," "It was very exciting," "I felt bored," and "It was no fun at all." All items were rated by the participant on a 5-point scale ranging from 1, "Strongly Disagree" to 5, "Strongly Agree." After reverse scoring 7 items, a final score was computed by calculating the average of items that were answered (blank items were excluded from the average).

Data Analysis

Analyses were performed using the Statistical Package for the Social Sciences (IBM Corp, Chicago, IL). Due to the failure of groups to meet normality assumptions as well as a relatively small sample size for some comparisons, we reported the median and interquartile range for all measures and applied the Wilcoxon signed rank nonparametric test to detect significant differences between measures when comparisons were merited [50].

For each of these analyses, participants were divided into one of three unique groups based on their method of game play and level of access: Sitting (aSit), wherein individuals were seated for game play, were unable to access the OTS board, and played only on the adapted board; Standing, wherein individuals used the adapted board only (aStd), as they were able to stand, but due to mobility or balance issues could not access the OTS board, and therefore, they played only on the adapted board; and Standing with both boards (StdStd), wherein individuals were able to stand for game play on both the OTS and adapted boards.

To assess the project aims, a series of analyses were conducted. To test whether energy expenditure during game play was different from the RPE (which could be readily taken for granted but was not assumed), resting METs were compared to game play METs for each subgroup. In general, 1 MET represents the amount of oxygen consumed and the number of calories burned at rest. In addition, for the subgroup StdStd, the change in METs (game play – rest) was compared between the OTS and adapted boards. The intensity of game play was defined as follows: <3 METs, light intensity; 3-6 METs, moderate intensity; >6 METs, vigorous intensity. Heart rate as a measure of exercise intensity was also recorded during all game play sessions. As a subjective rating of energy expenditure, RPE scores were analyzed for both OTS and adapted boards. To examine enjoyment, PACES scores were analyzed for both OTS and adapted boards for participants who were able to play both games; for participants who could only play using the adapted controller, scores were simply reported. Our primary comparison was for the StdStd group in which participants were able play using both the OTS and adapted boards. For the aSit and aStd groups, where participants were unable to play using the OTS board, we chose to report only descriptive measures for the corresponding scores while playing the adapted boards. Furthermore, MET change (game - rest) comparisons between the OTS and adapted board in aSit and aStd groups were not computed as the change score for OTS would be equal to zero.

Results

A total of 58 participants (aStd, n=10; aSit, n=31; StdStd, n=17) completed two 10-minute bouts of select Wii Fit Plus games on the OTS and adapted boards. The sample included 31 men and 27 women with a mean age of 41.21 (SD 12.70) years. Disabilities included spinal cord injury (n=11), multiple sclerosis (n=9), cerebral palsy (n=8), stroke (n=6), spina bifida (n=5), traumatic brain injury (n=4), limb loss (n=2), transverse myelitis (n=2), and others (n=11).

Heart rate and MET data are reported in Tables 2 and 3. For all conditions, the heart rate was significantly higher during game play than at rest (Table 2). Analysis of the metabolic data indicated that energy expenditure (METs) during game play was significantly greater than resting MET values for all players

XSL•FO
RenderX

during both game sets on the adapted and OTS boards (Table 3).

Changes in energy expenditure (game play METs – rest METs) for each group are shown in Figure 2. When comparing MET change values between the OTS and adapted boards for the StdStd group, no significant differences (P<.001) were observed. The OTS board data are not reported for aSit and aStd, as these groups could not play on the OTS board and a MET change of zero was assumed for each participant.

As a subjective rating of exercise intensity, RPE values were recorded as shown in Figure 3. Median scores are displayed for each of the three groups. For the StdStd group, scores were compared between the two boards. For Set A, RPE did not differ significantly between game play on the OTS and adapted boards. For Set B, RPE values for the adapted board were significantly higher (P<.05) than those for the OTS board.

With regard to enjoyment, there were no significant differences in the PACES scores between the OTS and adapted boards (Figure 4). Median PACES scores for all conditions were 4 or "agree."

Table 2. Resting and game play heart rate on the off-the-shelf and adapted boards.

Play style groups and game set	Game HR[a], mean (SD)	Game HR, median (IQR[b])	Resting HR, mean (SD)	Resting HR, median (IQR)	Wilcoxon signed rank *P* value
Off-the-shelf board					
aSit[c]			84.288 (12.278)	85.408 (74.985-90.446)	—[d]
Set A (n=27)	U[e]	U	N/A[f]	N/A	N/A
Set B (n=26)	U	U	N/A	N/A	N/A
aStd[g]			83.659 (10.861)	86.999 (74.539-90.791)	—
Set A (n=8)	U	U	N/A	N/A	N/A
Set B (n=8)	U	U	N/A	N/A	N/A
StdStd[h]			73.118 (11.161)	71.247 (67.099-79.265)	.001
Set A (n=14)	94.720 (19.783)	86.706 (81.270-106.294)	N/A	N/A	N/A
Set B (n=14)	96.677 (0.568)	92.436 (78.966-109.271)	N/A	N/A	N/A
Adapted board					
aSit			84.288 (12.278)	85.408 (74.985-90.446)	<.001
Set A (n=27)	95.844 (15.423)	95.108 (84.836-103.678)	N/A	N/A	N/A
Set B (n=26)	97.798 (15.960)	96.282 (87.430-103.082)	N/A	N/A	N/A
aStd			83.659 (10.861)	86.999 (74.539-90.791)	.01
Set A (n=8)	109.959 (10.248)	109.547 (102.975-117.275)	N/A	N/A	N/A
Set B (n=8)	110.250 (13.643)	105.966 (99.863-123.749)	N/A	N/A	N/A
StdStd			73.118 (11.161)	71.247 (67.099-79.265)	.001
Set A (n=14)	97.074 (21.027)	93.499 (81.296-108.745)	N/A	N/A	N/A
Set B (n=14)	95.188 (20.475)	89.529 (78.592-109.854)	N/A	N/A	N/A

[a]HR: heart rate.

[b]IQR: interquartile range.

[c]aSit: participants who only played seated on the adapted board.

[d]Not available.

[e]U: Unable to utilize off-the-shelf board for game play.

[f]N/A: not applicable.

[g]aStd: participants who only played standing on the adapted board.

[h]StdStd: participants who were able to play standing on both boards.

XSL•FO
RenderX

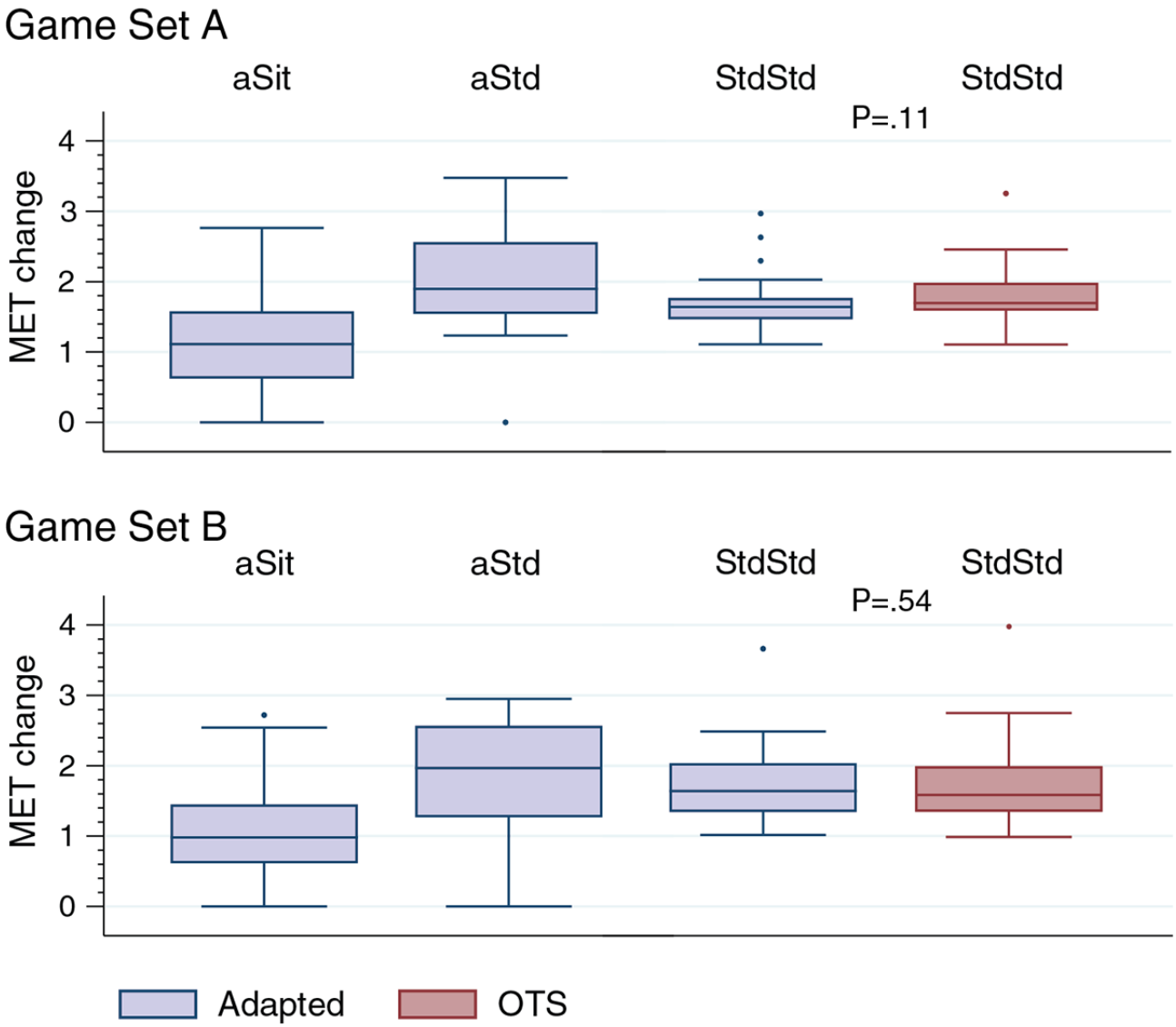
Table 3. Resting and game play energy expenditure on the off-the-shelf and adapted boards.

Play style groups and game set	Game METs[a], mean (SD)	Game METs, median (IQR[b])	Resting METs, mean (SD)	Resting METs, median (IQR)	Wilcoxon signed rank *P* value
Off-the-shelf board					
aSit[c]			1.157 (0.375)	1.123 (0.916-1.307)	—[d]
Set A (n=31)	U[e]	U	N/A[f]	N/A	N/A
Set B (n=31)	U	U	N/A	N/A	N/A
aStd[g]			1.063 (0.346)	0.902 (0.812-1.269)	—
Set A (n=10)	—	—	N/A	N/A	N/A
Set B (n=10)	—	—	N/A	N/A	N/A
StdStd[h]			1.014 (0.235)	1.032 (0.781-1.164)	<.001
Set A (n=17)	2.839 (0.646)	2.777 (2.623-3.048)	N/A	N/A	N/A
Set B (n=17)	2.702 (0.568)	2.707 (2.265-2.979)	N/A	N/A	N/A
Adapted board					
aSit			1.157 (0.375)	1.123 (0.916-1.307)	<.001
Set A (n=31)	2.261 (0.718)	2.143 (1.847-2.701)	N/A	N/A	N/A
Set B (n=31)	2.233 (0.751)	2.203 (1.762-2.567)	N/A	N/A	N/A
aStd			1.063 (0.346)	0.902 (0.812-1.269)	.005
Set A (n=10)	3.151 (1.034)	2.827 (2.482-3.605)	N/A	N/A	N/A
Set B (n=10)	2.990 (1.121)	3.028 (2.204-3.675)	N/A	N/A	N/A
StdStd			1.014 (0.235)	1.032 (0.781-1.164)	<.001
Set A (n=17)	2.732 (0.655)	2.714 (2.443-2.974)	N/A	N/A	N/A
Set B (n=17)	2.777 (0.803)	2.572 (2.253-3.136)	N/A	N/A	N/A

[a]METs: metabolic equivalents.
[b]IQR: interquartile range.
[c]aSit: participants who only played seated on the adapted board.
[d]Not available.
[e]U: Unable to utilize off-the-shelf board for game play.
[f]N/A: not applicable.
[g]aStd: participants who only played standing on the adapted board.
[h]StdStd: participants who were able to play standing on both boards.

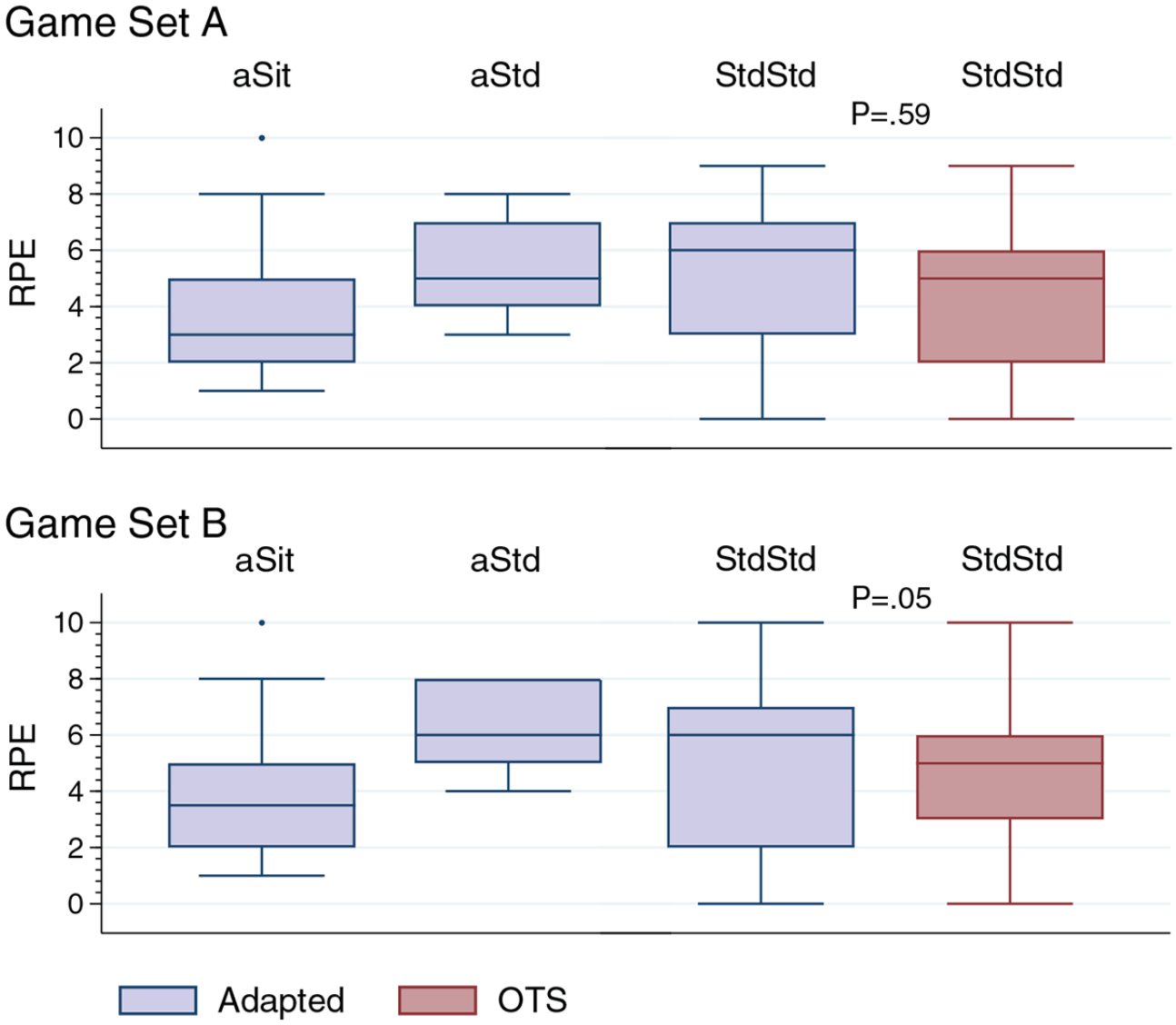
XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 2. Change in energy expenditure (metabolic equivalents [METs], gameplay – rest) for each group with comparison of MET change between boards (adapted vs off-the-shelf [OTS]) for the StdStd group. Play style groups: aSit - participants who only played seated on the adapted board; aStd - participants who only played standing on the adapted board; StdStd - participants who were able to play standing on both boards. MET-change data for the OTS board are not reported for aSit and aStd groups, as these groups could not play on the OTS board. Computing P values for these comparisons with the assumption of OTS=0 would yield highly statistically significant differences (<.01).



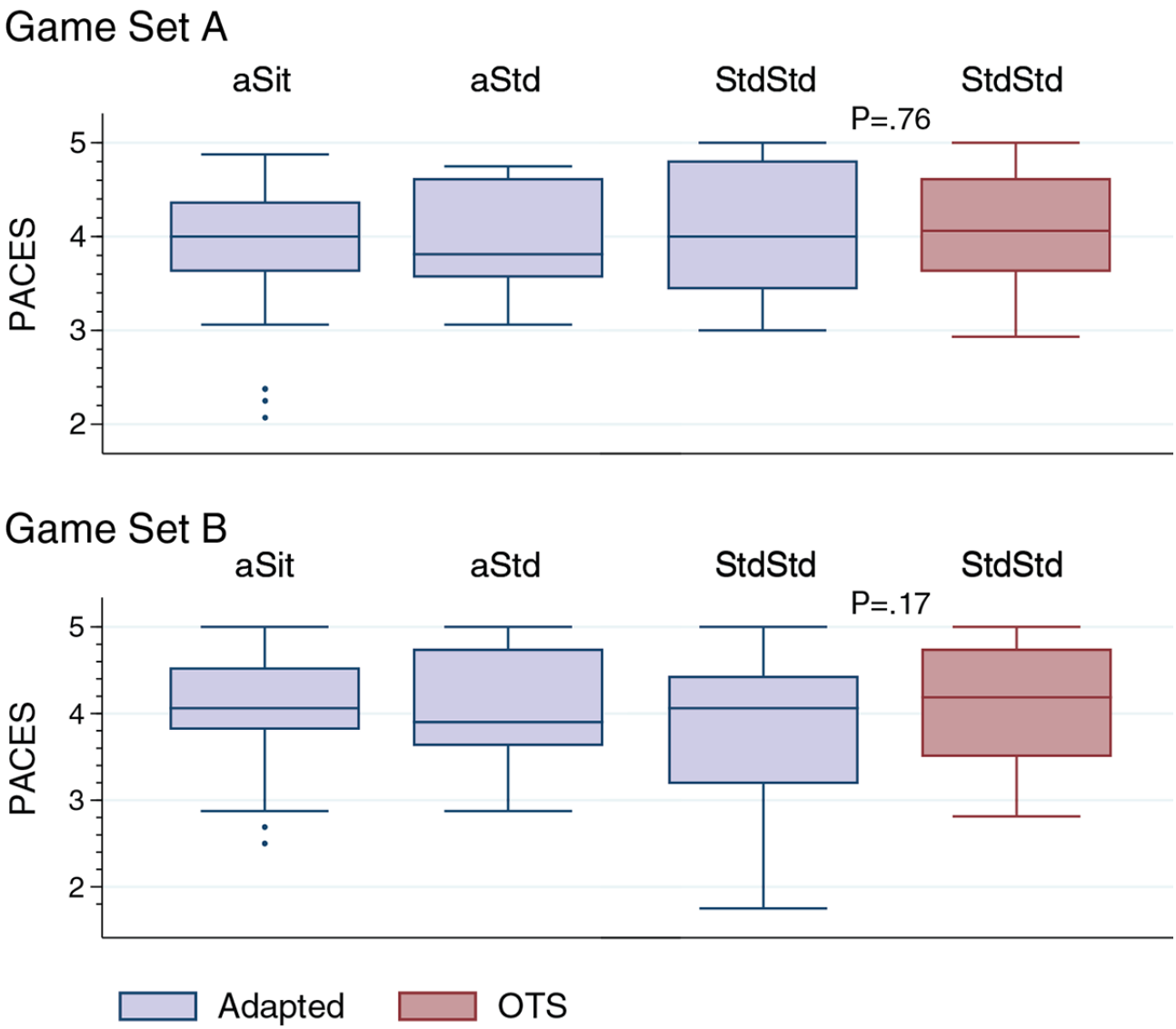
XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 3. Rating of perceived exertion (RPE) following game play for each group with comparison of RPE between boards(adapted vs off-the-shelf [OTS]) for the StdStd group. Play style groups: aSit - participants who only played seated on the adapted board; aStd - participants who only played standing on the adapted board; StdStd - participants who were able to play standing on both boards.



XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 4. Assessment of game play enjoyment based on Physical Activity Enjoyment Scale (PACES) scores. Play style groups: aSit - participants who only played seated on the adapted board; aStd - participants who only played standing on the adapted board; StdStd - participants who were able to play standing on both boards. PACES data for the off-the-shelf (OTS) board are not reported for aSit and aStd, as these groups could not play on the OTS board.



Discussion

Overview

Development of AVGs that are accessible to people with disabilities offers an innovative approach to overcoming a number of barriers to participation in physical activity. To date, little effort has been made to design commercially available AVG controllers in a way to promote active play in persons who require a wheelchair for mobility. Although several studies have documented increases in energy expenditure during AVG by individuals with mobility impairments who played standing [30,31,35,36], limited evidence is available regarding outcomes associated with AVG play while sitting. A feasibility study conducted by Rowland and Rimmer [12] modified the parameters for Dance, Dance Revolution game play to allow for arm use by placing the mat on a table and found increases in energy expenditure among three nonambulatory young adults with cerebral palsy. Mat Rosly et al [51] examined game play MET and RPE levels by persons with spinal cord injury utilizing the PlayStation 3 console with two PlayStation Move hand-held controllers. Other attempts have been made to supplement existing exercise equipment with gaming for various populations (ie, spinal cord injury and cerebral palsy) with mobility impairments. Adding game play to wheelchair ergometry makes exercise more enjoyable [52-54], similar to the case with leg cycling [55], while also achieving recommended exercise intensity levels for health-related outcomes.

Recognizing the potential for AVG play to increase energy expenditure among people with more severe mobility impairments led our team to develop an adapted balance board gaming controller [44]. Thus, the objective of the current study was to examine energy expenditure and enjoyment during AVG in persons with mobility impairments when using both OTS and adapted versions of the Wii Fit balance board.

Resting METs were compared to game play METs for each subgroup (based on the degree of mobility impairment) to determine if players actually experienced an increase in energy expenditure during AVG play above the resting values. Given

XSL•FO
RenderX

the severity of mobility impairment of some participants, this could not be assumed. The significant differences between game play and resting MET values for all players suggest that AVG play using the adapted controller may provide a leisure-time physical activity option that reduces sedentary time for individuals with a variety of mobility limitations. The increased usability of the gaming board opens the door to AVG play for many people who were previously unable to participate [10,44].

For players who were unable to utilize the OTS board, change in the METs from rest to game play equaled to zero (ie, METs remained at resting values). However, on the adapted board, participants who played while sitting were able to achieve average MET values of 2.261 (SD 0.718) and 2.233 (SD 0.751) kcal/kg/hour on the two game sets each. Average MET values for those who played standing were a bit higher (3.151 [SD 1.034] and 2.990 [SD 1.121] kcal/kg/hour), as expected, given the ability to engage greater muscle mass (ie, lower extremity). Although these average values represent light-to-moderate-intensity exercise, 16% of the seated participants and 41% of the standing participants achieved moderate-intensity exercise on at least one of the games. However, these standard categories based on MET values do not take into account the effect of an individual's impairment level on intensity of exercise.

In some cases, a self-reported rating of perceived exertion (RPE) on a 0-10 scale suggested greater exercise intensity levels than MET levels recorded, which is similar to the results of an exergaming study in persons with spinal cord injury [51]. Seated players reported a median RPE of 4 (moderate) for both game sets. Players who could only play standing on the adapted board reported somewhat hard-to-moderately hard RPE levels (5-6), while players who played standing on both boards reported moderate-to-somewhat hard RPE levels (4-5).

In a study on healthy young adults, in which participants played various Wii games, exercise intensity varied by the game, ranging from light to moderate [24]. The authors suggested that for games that require controller skill, exercise intensity may be influenced by the player's prior gaming experience. Furthermore, the benefits of light-intensity exercise are acknowledged even if moderate levels are not reached, which was the case for some participants in our study. As noted in a recent study, replacement of sedentary time with light-intensity physical activity is associated with less mortality in the general population of adults aged ≥40 years [56], with beneficial effects on health outcomes such as blood glucose levels [57].

In addition to the potential for increased energy expenditure, many people perceive AVGs as fun, providing an enjoyable option to perform recommended daily amounts of physical activity. In this study, the PACES scores indicated that all players, sitting and standing, enjoyed playing each of the game sets, with a median score of 4 on a 5-point scale. In a study comparing heavy-bag boxing to AVG boxing in a seated position among persons with spinal cord injury, participants reported more enjoyment during AVG boxing [38]. In another study, game play performance and exercise intensity were positively correlated with AVG enjoyment in youth with mobility impairments [58]. Enjoyment may serve as a determinant of physical activity, further suggesting the need to develop AVG interventions and examine the role of enjoyment on the level of engagement, exercise intensity, and adherence.

Limitations

This study was not a randomized controlled trial; therefore, no claims can be made regarding causality or efficacy. As an observational study, inherent limitations existed and thereby limit the generalizability of results to the broader community. All participants were recruited from the membership of a community physical activity and recreation center for individuals with physical disabilities. Individuals were, to some degree, physically active with varied AVG experience. Factors that may have influenced intensity of exercise but were not accounted for include game selection, limited familiarization period, and discomfort wearing the COSMED system for oxygen consumption measurement. Although a familiarization period was provided, some degree of game play learning may have occurred during data collection. In addition, given that participants played only a select group of AVGs, potential differences in enjoyment and energy expenditure between OTS and adapted controllers may not have been fully captured. Moreover, the standard categories of exercise intensity based on MET values do not take into consideration the effect of impairment level on exercise intensity. Furthermore, the intrinsic nature of measures examining subjective aspects of exercise such as enjoyment and perceived exertion prevented comparison of these aspects across board type for the participants who were unable to utilize the OTS board. Future studies should expand the participant recruitment pool, examine a broader range of AVGs, provide a more extensive familiarization period, and compare AVG play while utilizing the adapted controllers for other leisure-time physical activities. Further analyses that explore the multivariate correlation and variance-covariance matrices in the outcome measures (RPE, heart rate, MET, PACES) would provide a better understanding of the relationship between exercise intensity and enjoyment and of clinically meaningful differences during AVG in this subpopulation.

Conclusions

Engagement in physical activity is an important component of a healthy lifestyle and reduces the risk for many serious health conditions such as cancer, heart disease, stroke, and obesity [59]. Individuals with physical disabilities are at an even greater risk for many of these conditions. With limited options for physical activity, finding alternative means in order to stay active is critical for achieving optimal health. The adapted board improved access and allowed participants of all mobility levels to engage in AVG play, removing barriers associated with the OTS board. The adapted game controller provided AVG game play options for individuals unable to stand during play. Players were able to achieve MET values above the resting level, thereby reducing sedentary time. Furthermore, light-to-moderate intensity exercise levels were reached by some participants, providing an enjoyable option for engagement in health-related physical activity.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Acknowledgments

The content of this article was developed under a Rehabilitation Engineering Research Center on Interactive Exercise Technologies and Exercise Physiology for People with Disabilities RecTech grant from the National Institute on Disability, Independent Living, and Rehabilitation Research (NIDILRR; grant numbers H133E120005 and 90REGE0002-01-00). The NIDILRR is a center within the Administration for Community Living (ACL), Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). The contents of this article do not necessarily represent the policy of the NIDILRR, ACL, and HHS, and endorsement by the Federal Government should not be assumed. We thank Justin McCroskey, Brandon Kane, and Lieu Thompson, who were part of the research team, for their assistance with this project. We also express our gratitude to Samuel R Misko, Brandon Kirkland, and Jud Dunlap, as employees of the UAB Engineering and Innovative Technology Development group, for design and development of the adapted board.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

References

1. Martin Ginis KA, Ma JK, Latimer-Cheung AE, Rimmer JH. A systematic review of review articles addressing factors related to physical activity participation among children and adults with physical disabilities. Health Psychol Rev 2016 Dec;10(4):478-494. [doi: 10.1080/17437199.2016.1198240] [Medline: 27265062]
2. Williams TL, Smith B, Papathomas A. The barriers, benefits and facilitators of leisure time physical activity among people with spinal cord injury: A meta-synthesis of qualitative findings. Health Psychol Rev 2014;8(4):404-425. [doi: 10.1080/17437199.2014.898406] [Medline: 25211208]
3. Jaarsma EA, Dijkstra PU, Geertzen JHB, Dekker R. Barriers to and facilitators of sports participation for people with physical disabilities: A systematic review. Scand J Med Sci Sports 2014 Dec;24(6):871-881. [doi: 10.1111/sms.12218] [Medline: 24730752]
4. Martin JJ. Benefits and barriers to physical activity for individuals with disabilities: A social-relational model of disability perspective. Disabil Rehabil 2013;35(24):2030-2037. [doi: 10.3109/09638288.2013.802377] [Medline: 23781907]
5. Rimmer JH, Padalabalanarayanan S, Malone LA, Mehta T. Fitness facilities still lack accessibility for people with disabilities. Disabil Health J 2017 Dec;10(2):214-221 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/j.dhjo.2016.12.011] [Medline: 28143707]
6. Malone LA, Barfield JP, Brasher JD. Perceived benefits and barriers to exercise among persons with physical disabilities or chronic health conditions within action or maintenance stages of exercise. Disabil Health J 2012 Oct;5(4):254-260. [doi: 10.1016/j.dhjo.2012.05.004] [Medline: 23021736]
7. Barfield JP, Malone LA. Perceived exercise benefits and barriers among power wheelchair soccer players. J Rehabil Res Dev 2013;50(2):231-238 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 23761004]
8. Bailey BW, McInnis K. Energy cost of exergaming: A comparison of the energy cost of 6 forms of exergaming. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2011 Jul;165(7):597-602. [doi: 10.1001/archpediatrics.2011.15] [Medline: 21383255]
9. Malone LA, Padalabalanarayanan S, McCroskey J, Thirumalai M. Assessment of Active Video Gaming Using Adapted Controllers by Individuals With Physical Disabilities: A Protocol. JMIR Res Protoc 2017 Jun 16;6(6):e116 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/resprot.7621] [Medline: 28623186]
10. Wiemeyer J, Deutsch J, Malone LA, Rowland JL, Swartz MC, Xiong J, et al. Recommendations for the optimal design of exergame interventions for persons with disabilities: Challenges, best practices, and future research. Games Health J 2015 Feb;4(1):58-62 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1089/g4h.2014.0078] [Medline: 26181682]
11. Rowland JL, Malone LA, Fidopiastis CM, Padalabalanarayanan S, Thirumalai M, Rimmer JH. Perspectives on Active Video Gaming as a New Frontier in Accessible Physical Activity for Youth With Physical Disabilities. Phys Ther 2016 Apr;96(4):521-532 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2522/ptj.20140258] [Medline: 26316530]
12. Rowland JL, Rimmer JH. Feasibility of using active video gaming as a means for increasing energy expenditure in three nonambulatory young adults with disabilities. PM R 2012 Aug;4(8):569-573. [doi: 10.1016/j.pmrj.2012.03.011] [Medline: 22698849]
13. Dutta N, Pereira MA. Effects of active video games on energy expenditure in adults: A systematic literature review. J Phys Act Health 2015 Jun;12(6):890-899. [doi: 10.1123/jpah.2013-0168] [Medline: 25134074]
14. Santo AS, Barkley JE, Hafen PS, Navalta J. Physiological responses and hedonics during prolonged physically interactive videogame play. Games Health J 2016 Apr;5(2):108-113. [doi: 10.1089/g4h.2015.0077] [Medline: 26978073]
15. Mullins NM, Tessmer KA, McCarroll ML, Peppel BP. Physiological and perceptual responses to Nintendo® Wii Fit™ in young and older adults. Int J Exerc Sci 2012;5(1):79-92 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 27182377]
16. Graves LEF, Ridgers ND, Williams K, Stratton G, Atkinson G, Cable NT. The physiological cost and enjoyment of Wii Fit in adolescents, young adults, and older adults. J Phys Act Health 2010 May;7(3):393-401. [Medline: 20551497]

XSL•FO
RenderX

17. Maloney AE, Bethea TC, Kelsey KS, Marks JT, Paez S, Rosenberg AM, et al. A pilot of a video game (DDR) to promote physical activity and decrease sedentary screen time. Obesity (Silver Spring) 2008 Sep;16(9):2074-2080 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1038/oby.2008.295] [Medline: 19186332]
18. Worley JR, Rogers SN, Kraemer RR. Metabolic responses to Wii Fit™ video games at different game levels. J Strength Cond Res 2011 Mar;25(3):689-693. [doi: 10.1519/JSC.0b013e318207eae9] [Medline: 21311348]
19. Cone BL, Levy SS, Goble DJ. Wii Fit exer-game training improves sensory weighting and dynamic balance in healthy young adults. Gait Posture 2015 Feb;41(2):711-715. [doi: 10.1016/j.gaitpost.2015.01.030] [Medline: 25703183]
20. Street TD, Lacey SJ, Langdon RR. Gaming your way to health: A systematic review of exergaming programs to increase health and exercise behaviors in adults. Games Health J 2017 Jun;6(3):136-146. [doi: 10.1089/g4h.2016.0102] [Medline: 28448175]
21. Peng W, Lin JH, Crouse J. Is playing exergames really exercising? A meta-analysis of energy expenditure in active video games. Cyberpsychol Behav Soc Netw 2011 Nov;14(11):681-688. [doi: 10.1089/cyber.2010.0578] [Medline: 21668370]
22. Peng W, Crouse JC, Lin JH. Using active video games for physical activity promotion: A systematic review of the current state of research. Health Educ Behav 2013 Apr;40(2):171-192. [doi: 10.1177/1090198112444956] [Medline: 22773597]
23. Guderian B, Borreson LA, Sletten LE, Cable K, Stecker TP, Probst MA, et al. The cardiovascular and metabolic responses to Wii Fit video game playing in middle-aged and older adults. J Sports Med Phys Fitness 2010 Dec;50(4):436-442. [Medline: 21178930]
24. O'Donovan C, Hussey J. Active video games as a form of exercise and the effect of gaming experience: A preliminary study in healthy young adults. Physiotherapy 2012 Sep;98(3):205-210. [doi: 10.1016/j.physio.2012.05.001] [Medline: 22898576]
25. Willems MET, Bond TS. Comparison of physiological and metabolic responses to playing Nintendo Wii Sports and brisk treadmill walking. Journal of Human Kinetics 2009;22:43-50 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2478/v10078-009-0022-5]
26. Bonetti AJ, Drury DG, Danoff JV, Miller TA. Comparison of acute exercise responses between conventional video gaming and isometric resistance exergaming. J Strength Cond Res 2010 Jul;24(7):1799-1803. [doi: 10.1519/JSC.0b013e3181bab4a8] [Medline: 19966584]
27. Miyachi M, Yamamoto K, Ohkawara K, Tanaka S. METs in adults while playing active video games: A metabolic chamber study. Med Sci Sports Exerc 2010 Jun;42(6):1149-1153. [doi: 10.1249/MSS.0b013e3181c51c78] [Medline: 19997034]
28. Warburton DE, Bredin SS, Horita LT, Zbogar D, Scott JM, Esch BT, et al. The health benefits of interactive video game exercise. Appl Physiol Nutr Metab 2007 Aug;32(4):655-663. [doi: 10.1139/H07-038] [Medline: 17622279]
29. Deutsch JE, Guarrera-Bowlby P, Myslinski MJ, Kafri M. Is there evidence that active videogames increase energy expenditure and exercise intensity for people poststroke and with cerebral palsy? Games Health J 2015 Feb;4(1):31-37. [doi: 10.1089/g4h.2014.0082] [Medline: 26181678]
30. Howcroft J, Klejman S, Fehlings D, Wright V, Zabjek K, Andrysek J, et al. Active video game play in children with cerebral palsy: Potential for physical activity promotion and rehabilitation therapies. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 2012 Aug;93(8):1448-1456. [doi: 10.1016/j.apmr.2012.02.033] [Medline: 22571917]
31. Hurkmans HL, van den Berg-Emons RJ, Stam HJ. Energy expenditure in adults with cerebral palsy playing Wii Sports. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 2010 Oct;91(10):1577-1581. [doi: 10.1016/j.apmr.2010.07.216] [Medline: 20875517]
32. Robert M, Ballaz L, Hart R, Lemay M. Exercise intensity levels in children with cerebral palsy while playing with an active video game console. Phys Ther 2013 Aug;93(8):1084-1091 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2522/ptj.20120204] [Medline: 23580626]
33. Mat Rosly M, Mat Rosly H, Davis Oam GM, Husain R, Hasnan N. Exergaming for individuals with neurological disability: A systematic review. Disabil Rehabil 2017 Apr;39(8):727-735. [doi: 10.3109/09638288.2016.1161086] [Medline: 27108475]
34. Roopchand-Martin S, Nelson G, Gordon C. Can persons with paraplegia obtain training heart rates when boxing on the Nintendo Wii. N Z J Physiother 2014;42(1):28-32 [FREE Full text]
35. Hurkmans HL, Ribbers GM, Streur-Kranenburg MF, Stam HJ, van den Berg-Emons RJ. Energy expenditure in chronic stroke patients playing Wii Sports: A pilot study. J Neuroeng Rehabil 2011 Jul 14;8:38 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1186/1743-0003-8-38] [Medline: 21756315]
36. Kafri M, Myslinski MJ, Gade VK, Deutsch JE. Energy expenditure and exercise intensity of interactive video gaming in individuals poststroke. Neurorehabil Neural Repair 2014 Jan;28(1):56-65. [doi: 10.1177/1545968313497100] [Medline: 23897906]
37. Neil A, Ens S, Pelletier R, Jarus T, Rand D. Sony PlayStation EyeToy elicits higher levels of movement than the Nintendo Wii: implications for stroke rehabilitation. Eur J Phys Rehabil Med 2013 Feb;49(1):13-21 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 23172403]
38. Mat Rosly M, Mat Rosly H, Hasnan N, Davis GM, Husain R. Exergaming boxing versus heavy bag boxing: Are these equipotent for individuals with spinal cord injury? Eur J Phys Rehabil Med 2017 Jan 13;53(4):527-534 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.23736/S1973-9087.17.04456-2] [Medline: 28092144]
39. Rimmer JA, Rowland JL. Physical activity for youth with disabilities: A critical need in an underserved population. Dev Neurorehabil 2008;11(2):141-148. [doi: 10.1080/17518420701688649] [Medline: 18415819]

XSL•FO
RenderX

40. Widman LM, McDonald CM, Abresch RT. Effectiveness of an upper extremity exercise device integrated with computer gaming for aerobic training in adolescents with spinal cord dysfunction. J Spinal Cord Med 2006;29(4):363-370 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 17044386]
41. Eckert M, Gómez-Martinho I, Meneses J, Martínez JF. New approaches to exciting exergame-experiences for people with motor function impairments. Sensors (Basel) 2017 Feb 12;17(2) [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.3390/s17020354] [Medline: 28208682]
42. Estepa A, Sponton Piriz S, Albornoz E, Martínez C. Development of a Kinect-based exergaming system for motor rehabilitation in neurological disorders. J Phys Conf Ser 2016 May 09;705:012060. [doi: 10.1088/1742-6596/705/1/012060]
43. Seo NJ, Arun Kumar J, Hur P, Crocher V, Motawar B, Lakshminarayanan K. Usability evaluation of low-cost virtual reality hand and arm rehabilitation games. J Rehabil Res Dev 2016;53(3):321-334 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1682/JRRD.2015.03.0045] [Medline: 27271199]
44. Thirumalai M, Kirkland WB, Misko SR, Padalabalanarayanan S, Malone LA. Adapting the Wii Fit balance board to enable active video game play by wheelchair users: User-centered design and usability evaluation. JMIR Rehabil Assist Technol 2018 Mar 06;5(1):e2 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/rehab.8003] [Medline: 29510972]
45. World Health Organization. International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2001.
46. World Health Organization. How to use the ICF: A practical manual for using the International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health (ICF). Exposure draft for comment. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2013. URL: https://www.who.int/classifications/drafticfpracticalmanual.pdf [accessed 2019-01-09] [WebCite Cache ID 75JHN3Vwk]
47. HealthMeasures: Transforming How Health is Measured.: Northwestern University URL: http://www.healthmeasures.net/ [accessed 2019-01-09] [WebCite Cache ID 75JHa0AHM]
48. HealthMeasures: Transforming How Health is Measured.: Northwestern University PROMIS URL: http://www.healthmeasures.net/explore-measurement-systems/promis [accessed 2019-01-22] [WebCite Cache ID 75cJeTgle]
49. Moore JB, Yin Z, Hanes J, Duda J, Gutin B, Barbeau P. Measuring Enjoyment of Physical Activity in Children: Validation of the Physical Activity Enjoyment Scale. J Appl Sport Psychol 2009 Jan 01;21(S1):S116-S129 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1080/10413200802593612] [Medline: 20209028]
50. Whitley E, Ball J. Statistics review 6: Nonparametric methods. Crit Care 2002;6(6):509-513. [Medline: 12493072]
51. Mat Rosly M, Halaki M, Mat Rosly H, Cuesta V, Hasnan N, Davis GM, et al. Exergaming for individuals with spinal cord injury: A pilot study. Games Health J 2017;6(5):279-289. [Medline: 28968153]
52. Guo S, Grindle GG, Authier EL, Cooper RA, Fitzgerald SG, Kelleher A, et al. Development and qualitative assessment of the GAME(Cycle) exercise system. IEEE Trans Neural Syst Rehabil Eng Mar 2006;14(1):83-90. [Medline: 16562635]
53. Fitzgerald SG, Cooper RA, Thorman T, Cooper R, Guo S, Boninger ML. The GAME(Cycle) exercise system: Comparison with standard ergometry. J Spinal Cord Med 2004;27(5):453-459. [Medline: 15648800]
54. O'Connor TJ, Fitzgerald SG, Cooper RA, Thorman TA, Boninger ML. Does computer game play aid in motivation of exercise and increase metabolic activity during wheelchair ergometry? Med Eng Phys. Med Eng Phys 2001;23(4):267-273. [Medline: 11427364]
55. Hernandez HA, Graham TCN, Fehlings D, Switzer L, Ye Z, Bellay Q, et al. Design of an exergaming station for children with cerebral palsy. In: Proceedings of the SIGCHI Conference on Human Factors in Computing Systems. 2012 Presented at: SIGCHI Conference on Human Factors in Computing Systems; May 5-10, 2012; Austin, TX p. 2619-2628.
56. Saint-Maurice PF, Troiano RP, Berrigan D, Kraus WE, Matthews CE. Volume of light versus moderate-to-vigorous physical activity: Similar benefits for all-cause mortality? J Am Heart Assoc 2018 Apr 02;7(7) [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1161/JAHA.118.008815] [Medline: 29610219]
57. Healy GN, Dunstan DW, Salmon J, Cerin E, Shaw JE, Zimmet PZ, et al. Objectively measured light-intensity physical activity is independently associated with 2-h plasma glucose. Diabetes Care 2007 Jun;30(6):1384-1389. [doi: 10.2337/dc07-0114] [Medline: 17473059]
58. Malone LA, Rowland JL, Rogers R, Mehta T, Padalabalanarayanan S, Thirumalai M, et al. Active videogaming in youth with physical disability: Gameplay and enjoyment. Games Health J 2016 Oct 03;5(5):333-341. [doi: 10.1089/g4h.2015.0105] [Medline: 27696899]
59. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Physical Activity Guidelines for Americans, 2nd Edition. 2018. URL: https://health.gov/paguidelines/second-edition/pdf/Physical_Activity_Guidelines_2nd_edition.pdf [accessed 2019-01-09] [WebCite Cache ID 75JIqAZLQ]

Abbreviations

aSit: participants who only played seated on the adapted board
aStd: participants who only played standing on the adapted board
AVG: active video games
HR: heart rate
ICF: International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health

XSL•FO
RenderX

IQR: interquartile range
MET: metabolic equivalent
OTS: off-the-shelf
PACES: Physical Activity Enjoyment Scale
PROMIS: Patient Reported Outcomes Measurement Information System
RPE: rating of perceived exertion
StdStd: participants who were able to play standing on both boards
SUS: System Usability Scale

Edited by G Eysenbach; submitted 18.06.18; peer-reviewed by M Rosly, M Eckert, A Davoudi; comments to author 16.07.18; revised version received 10.12.18; accepted 30.12.18; published 01.02.19.

Please cite as:
Malone LA, Thirumalai M, Padalabalanarayanan S, Neal WN, Bowman S, Mehta T
Energy Expenditure and Enjoyment During Active Video Gaming Using an Adapted Wii Fit Balance Board in Adults with Physical Disabilities: Observational Study
JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e11326
URL: http://games.jmir.org/2019/1/e11326/
doi:10.2196/11326
PMID:30707098

©Laurie A Malone, Mohanraj Thirumalai, Sangeetha Padalabalanarayanan, Whitney N Neal, Sean Bowman, Tapan Mehta. Originally published in JMIR Serious Games (http://games.jmir.org), 01.02.2019. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR Serious Games, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://games.jmir.org, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Original Paper

Effectiveness of a Behavior Change Technique–Based Smartphone Game to Improve Intrinsic Motivation and Physical Activity Adherence in Patients With Type 2 Diabetes: Randomized Controlled Trial

Christoph Höchsmann[1,2], PhD; Denis Infanger[1], PhD; Christopher Klenk[1], MD; Karsten Königstein[1], MD; Steffen P Walz[3], PhD; Arno Schmidt-Trucksäss[1], MD

[1]Department of Sport, Exercise and Health, University of Basel, Basel, Switzerland

[2]Pennington Biomedical Research Center, Baton Rouge, LA, United States

[3]Centre for Design Innovation, Swinburne University of Technology, Melbourne, Australia

Corresponding Author:
Arno Schmidt-Trucksäss, MD
Department of Sport, Exercise and Health
University of Basel
Birsstrasse 320 B
Basel, 4052
Switzerland
Phone: 41 612074740
Email: arno.schmidt-trucksaess@unibas.ch

Abstract

Background: Regular physical activity (PA) is an essential component of a successful type 2 diabetes treatment. However, despite the manifest evidence for the numerous health benefits of regular PA, most patients with type 2 diabetes remain inactive, often due to low motivation and lack of PA enjoyment. A recent and promising approach to help overcome these PA barriers and motivate inactive individuals to change their PA behavior is PA-promoting smartphone games. While short-term results of these games are encouraging, the long-term success in effectively changing PA behavior has to date not been confirmed. It is possible that an insufficient incorporation of motivational elements or flaws in gameplay and storyline in these games affect the long-term motivation to play and thereby prevent sustained changes in PA behavior. We aimed to address these design challenges by developing a PA-promoting smartphone game that incorporates established behavior change techniques and specifically targets inactive type 2 diabetes patients.

Objective: To investigate if a self-developed, behavior change technique-based smartphone game designed by an interdisciplinary team is able to motivate inactive individuals with type 2 diabetes for regular use and thereby increase their intrinsic PA motivation.

Methods: Thirty-six inactive, overweight type 2 diabetes patients (45-70 years of age) were randomly assigned to either the intervention group or the control group (one-time lifestyle counseling). Participants were instructed to play the smartphone game or to implement the recommendations from the lifestyle counseling autonomously during the 24-week intervention period. Intrinsic PA motivation was assessed with an abridged 12-item version of the Intrinsic Motivation Inventory (IMI) before and after the intervention. In addition, adherence to the game-proposed PA recommendations during the intervention period was assessed in the intervention group via the phone-recorded game usage data.

Results: Intrinsic PA motivation (IMI total score) increased significantly in the intervention group (+6.4 (SD 4.2; $P<.001$) points) while it decreased by 1.9 (SD 16.5; $P=.623$) points in the control group. The adjusted difference between both groups was 8.1 (95% CI 0.9, 15.4; $P=.029$) points. The subscales “interest/enjoyment” (+2.0 (SD 1.9) points, $P<.001$) and “perceived competence” (+2.4 (SD 2.4) points, $P<.001$) likewise increased significantly in the intervention group while they did not change significantly in the control group. The usage data revealed that participants in the intervention group used the game for an average of 131.1 (SD 48.7) minutes of in-game walking and for an average of 15.3 (SD 24.6) minutes of strength training per week. We found a significant positive association between total in-game training (min) and change in IMI total score (beta=0.0028; 95% CI 0.0007-0.0049; $P=.01$).

XSL•FO
RenderX

Conclusions: In inactive individuals with type 2 diabetes, a novel smartphone game incorporating established motivational elements and personalized PA recommendations elicits significant increases in intrinsic PA motivation that are accompanied by de-facto improvements in PA adherence over 24 weeks.

Trial Registration: ClinicalTrials.gov NCT02657018; https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02657018

(JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e11444) doi:10.2196/11444

KEYWORDS

behavior change; exercise adherence; gamification; intrinsic motivation; mhealth; mobile phone game; physical activity; type 2 diabetes

Introduction

Diabetes mellitus affects over 400 million adults worldwide [1], and 90%-95% of all cases are attributed to type 2 diabetes [2]. The disease is associated with numerous complications and comorbidities that drastically increase direct and indirect medical costs and considerably contribute to the disease's enormous financial strain worldwide [3].

Regular physical activity (PA), with its proven positive effects on glucose and lipid metabolism, blood pressure, cardiovascular complications, and quality of life, is a key component of successful diabetes treatment [4]. Despite these health benefits and the fact that patients with diabetes are usually encouraged to increase PA by their physicians, long-term adherence to PA-promoting programs is generally poor, and the level of regular PA remains low [2,5]. PA has been estimated to be responsible for 6%-10% of the world's type 2 diabetes prevalence [6] and increase the risk of all-cause mortality by an estimated 60% [7]. Lack of infrastructure, missing social support, health concerns, and especially low motivation and lack of PA enjoyment are the main deterrents that keep patients with type 2 diabetes from effectively changing their PA behaviors [8,9]. As intrinsically motivated individuals have been shown to have higher PA engagement and better PA adherence than those who are primarily motivated by external factors [10], PA-promoting programs should aim at particularly helping patients increase their PA enjoyment, and consequently, intrinsic motivation for regular PA [11].

A promising approach that has increasingly been examined in recent years to promote regular PA in unmotivated, inactive target groups is exergames. Through the enjoyable game experience, console-based exergames have been shown to motivate inactive patients with type 2 diabetes to voluntarily engage in more regular PA and thereby improve their glycemic control and overall health status [12]. Very recently, PA-promoting game apps such as Pokémon GO (Niantic Labs, San Francisco, CA) have entered the market and likewise aim at sustaining PA habits through gamified incentives. Although Pokémon GO certainly has the potential to increase daily PA, it should be noted that the game-related initial increases of daily PA of 25% in the first week have been shown to gradually diminish in subsequent weeks and return to baseline after only 6 weeks [13]. It is possible that the game design does not include a sufficient degree of narrative, gameplay, or storytelling, which are required to sustainably motivate the player to play the game and consequently make a PA-promoting game effective in the long term [14]. To address these design challenges, with an interdisciplinary team featuring sports scientists, gamification researchers, professional game developers, and clinical professionals, we developed a novel smartphone game that incorporates established motivational elements [15] and behavior change techniques [16] to encourage inactive patients with type 2 diabetes to adopt a healthier, more active lifestyle.

The purpose of this study was to investigate if the behavior change technique–based smartphone game can motivate inactive individuals with type 2 diabetes for regular use and thereby increase their intrinsic PA motivation. We hypothesized that use of the game would lead to greater improvements in intrinsic PA motivation than a control intervention consisting of a one-time lifestyle counseling and thereby increase PA adherence.

Methods

Study Design

This 24-week randomized controlled trial was conducted in accordance with the Declaration of Helsinki [17] between August 2016 and April 2018 at the Department of Sport, Exercise and Health of the University of Basel, Switzerland (trial registration: NCT02657018) and was approved by the local ethics committee (EKNZ 2015-424). Written informed consent was obtained from all study participants prior to inclusion in the study. The primary aim of this study was to investigate the effect of a novel PA-promoting smartphone game on daily PA in inactive patients with type 2 diabetes, measured as steps per day with the previously validated Garmin Vivofit 2 activity wristband [18] for 1 week before and after the intervention period. A significant increase in daily PA was found in the intervention group with average postintervention step counts corresponding to established PA recommendations [19]. The increases in daily PA were accompanied by significant improvements in aerobic capacity and stabilization of the glycemic control, measured as hemoglobin A1c (C. Höchsmann, personal communication, June 2018). Additional aims were to assess the effect of the game on the predefined [20] further outcomes "intrinsic PA motivation" and "PA adherence." Participants were allocated at random to either the intervention or the control group using R version 3.2.3 (R Foundation for Statistical Computing, Vienna, Austria) and the R add-on package "blockrand" version 1.3 to apply permuted block randomization with randomly varying block sizes. The randomization list was generated in advance and transmitted by a person not involved in the study by using serially numbered, sealed, opaque envelopes. All outcome assessors

XSL•FO
RenderX

were blinded with respect to the group allocation. It has been shown that after the initial 6 weeks, adherence to an exercise program in patients with type 2 diabetes decreases steadily, with a dropout of almost 80% after 6 months but is relatively stable beyond the 6-month timeframe [21]. Therefore, we chose an intervention duration of 24 weeks, which matches this critical 6-month timeframe and would consequently allow assessment of the longer-term PA adherence. The detailed study protocol can be found in a previous publication [20].

Recruitment

Physically inactive overweight (body mass index ≥ 25 kg/m^2) patients with type 2 diabetes (noninsulin-dependent) between the ages of 45 and 70 years were recruited in cooperation with various hospitals, doctor's offices, and diabetes care centers in the Basel metropolitan area and via online and newspaper advertising. Eligible participants were required to have used a smartphone regularly during the year before the study to ensure that they were technologically proficient enough to represent a realistic target audience for a PA-promoting smartphone game. During the eligibility screening, participants underwent a medical examination including height, body mass, body fat content (by bioelectrical impedance analysis), and resting blood pressure measurements as well as resting electrocardiography. To verify insufficient levels of PA before the study (<150 minutes of moderate-intensity PA per week), participants filled out the Freiburg Questionnaire of PA [22] as part of the eligibility screening. Present health risks that contraindicate exercise testing [23] as well as an impaired physical mobility, acute infections, or injuries excluded participants from enrolling and continuing their participation in the study.

Intervention

After the baseline assessment, the self-developed and commercially released smartphone game "Mission: Schweinehund" was installed on the phones of participants in the intervention group. The game was designed to be self-explanatory and motivate for regular use through its game mechanics. Therefore, participants only received basic instructions regarding the game controls, which were not related to an intended frequency or duration of use during the intervention period. The game uses the self-determination theory as the theoretical framework [24]. The self-determination theory is a widely researched theory of motivation that addresses both intrinsic and extrinsic motives for acting and has shown its utility in explaining processes that underpin exercise behavior [25] as well as motivation to play video games [26]. The goal of the game is to restore a decayed garden by planting trees and flowers. In doing so, the player attracts animals that used to live in the garden to come back and help with the restoration process. At the same time, the Schweinehund, the game's adversary, is kept in check. In German, "innerer Schweinehund" (inner swine hound) refers to the weak or lazy part of one's nature, often regarding PA, that has to be overcome to get one's self going. The garden setting was deliberately chosen, as its restoration stands metaphorically for the restoration of the player's body through regular PA. In addition, it has been shown that gardening is among the target group's preferred forms of PA [27] and that gardening-themed games are quite popular and comprehensible to a wide range of players because of their straightforward mechanics [28,29]. In the game, regular PA is rewarded with water or building materials that are needed to restore the garden and proceed in the storyline. When designing the game, close attention was paid to the inclusion of established motivational elements [15] and behavior change techniques [16]. In addition to the rewards for successful PA behavior, goal setting, action planning, feedback on performance, and prompts and cues were incorporated into the game mechanics to support sustained changes in PA behavior. During the development phase of the game, all design choices, behavioral/motivational elements, and game mechanics were tested extensively with the target group regarding usability and motivational efficacy. Overall, four user studies (unpublished data) with a total of 44 participants and various thematic foci (eg, motivational efficacy of game concept and storyline, suitability of in-game workout regimen and baseline tests, usability of sensor tracking, and suitability of motivational elements) were conducted during the 26-month development phase.

The game's PA content includes in-game workouts as well as the promotion of daily PA that follow the American College of Sports Medicine and European Association for Cardiovascular Prevention & Rehabilitation principles of exercise training [30,31]. In-game workouts consist of 130 variations of strength, endurance, balance, and flexibility exercises whose execution, as well as daily PA, is tracked via the phone's sensors (camera, accelerometer, and gyroscope). To allow individualization of the PA-related content of the game, exercise tests such as the 1-minute Sit-to-Stand Test [32] and the 6-Minute Walk Test [33] assess the player's fitness level at baseline and periodically during play. Based on the results, an algorithm selects appropriate entry levels and tailored rates of intensity progression for the exercise regimens and the daily PA goals, which could also be manually adjusted by the player to fit personal preferences and potential physical limitations. An individualization of the exercise regimen is crucial because unrealistic, overwhelming targets often reduce patients' motivation and thereby directly affect adherence [34]. Regularity of PA and relative improvements rather than high absolute values determine the progression in the game and thereby make game success independent of the individual fitness level. Participants in the control group received a one-time lifestyle counseling to promote baseline activities of daily life [35]. Further, control group participants were provided with a structured exercise plan consisting of strength and endurance exercises with moderately increasing intensity and duration, comparable to the content of the game that was to be implemented autonomously during the intervention period. A detailed description of the game including screenshots can be found in a previous publication [20].

Outcome Measures

Intrinsic Physical Activity Motivation

Intrinsic PA motivation was measured using an abridged 12-item version of the Intrinsic Motivation Inventory (IMI) at baseline and after the 24-week intervention. The IMI has gained widespread acceptance as a multidimensional measure of intrinsic motivation in the context of sports and physical activity

XSL•FO
RenderX

[36-41]. The questionnaire included four subscales: "interest/enjoyment," "perceived competence," "perceived choice," and "value/usefulness." These subscales have been previously used to assess participants' subjective experience regarding participation in a television exercise program [36] and to examine the motivational pull of video games [26]. The "interest/enjoyment" subscale is considered the true self-report measure of intrinsic motivation, whereas "perceived competence," "perceived choice," and "value/usefulness" are viewed as positive predictors of intrinsic motivation [36]. The items of each subscale were modified to fit the content of this study and rated on a 7-point Likert scale ranging from 1 (*not at all true*) to 7 (*very true*). This yielded total scores between 3 and 21 for each subscale and between 12 and 84 for the entire questionnaire. Higher scores indicated more internally motivated, self-regulated PA behavior.

Physical Activity Adherence

In the intervention group, adherence to the game-proposed PA recommendations was assessed during the intervention period via the recorded usage data from the participants' phones. Usage data included daily PA (steps per day), completed and canceled in-game workouts, and patterns and total duration of game use. The accuracy of iPhones and Android phones to detect steps during various walking conditions independent of the placement on the body has been confirmed in our previous study [18]. For in-game walking, stride cadence was measured to assess periods of moderate-to-vigorous-intensity walking defined as ≥100 steps/minute [19].

Statistical Analysis

Summary statistics were calculated to characterize the study sample and for pre- and postintervention data, as appropriate. Continuous data were summarized using mean (SD) and median (interquartile range [IQR]). Intrinsic PA motivation (IMI total score and scores for all four subscales) after the intervention was analyzed by analysis of covariance [42]. Results are presented as differences in outcome (with 95% CI) between participants in the intervention group and those in the control group, adjusted for the corresponding values at baseline. PA adherence was analyzed descriptively using the median, IQR, and range to illustrate game-related and overall-recorded daily PA per week during the 24-week intervention period. A linear regression model was used to assess the relationship between total in-game training (minutes) and change in IMI total score. Assumptions of the analysis of covariance were checked visually using residual plots. All statistical methods used to compare the groups for intrinsic PA motivation in the present report were prespecified and registered. R 3.4.0 (R Foundation for Statistical Computing) was used for statistical analyses and graphics with the significance level set to .05 (two-sided).

Sample Size

An *a priori* sample size calculation based on the primary outcome was conducted for this study. Since intrinsic PA motivation and PA adherence are secondary outcomes, the corresponding analyses presented in this report should be considered explorative, and we reported the evidence in the data for the hypothesized effect of the game use on intrinsic PA motivation and PA adherence.

Results

Participant Flow and Characteristics

Figure 1 illustrates the participants' flow through the study. A total of 68 subjects were assessed for eligibility, of which 19 did not meet the inclusion criteria and 13 declined to participate, leading to the exclusion of 32 subjects. All the remaining participants (n=36) were randomly assigned to either the intervention group (n=18) or the control group (n=18) (Figure 1). Baseline characteristics of study participants were balanced between the two groups (Table 1). One participant dropped out of the study before follow-up due to medical reasons not related to the study. No study-related or other adverse events were reported during the intervention period. Further, 35 participants completed the study and were included in the analyses.

Changes in Intrinsic Physical Activity Motivation

Figure 2 shows the pre- and postintervention data as mean and IQR for the IMI total score and all four subscales. Intrinsic PA motivation (IMI total score) increased significantly by an average of 6.39 (SD 4.19; $P<.001$) points in the intervention group and decreased by an average of 1.94 (SD 16.46; $P=.62$) points in the control group with an adjusted difference of 8.15 points (95% CI 0.90-15.39; $P=.03$) between the two groups. Similarly, we observed significant increases in scores for the subscales "interest/enjoyment" (by 2.00 [SD 1.94] points, $P<.001$) and "perceived competence" (by 2.44 [SD 2.36] points, $P<.001$) in the intervention group but no significant change in the control group. The adjusted difference between the two groups was 2.03 points (95% CI 0.04-4.09; $P=.049$) for "interest/enjoyment" and 2.88 points (95% CI 0.59-5.17, $P=.02$) for "perceived competence." The value/usefulness subscale showed a significant adjusted difference of 2.72 points (95% CI 0.28-5.16; $P=.03$) in favor of the intervention group despite nonsignificant changes in either group. The score for the "perceived choice" subscale increased significantly by 1.22 (SD 2.44) points in the intervention group, but with a nonsignificant adjusted difference of 0.67 points (95% CI –1.27 to 2.61; $P=.91$) between the two groups.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 1. Flow diagram of study participants.

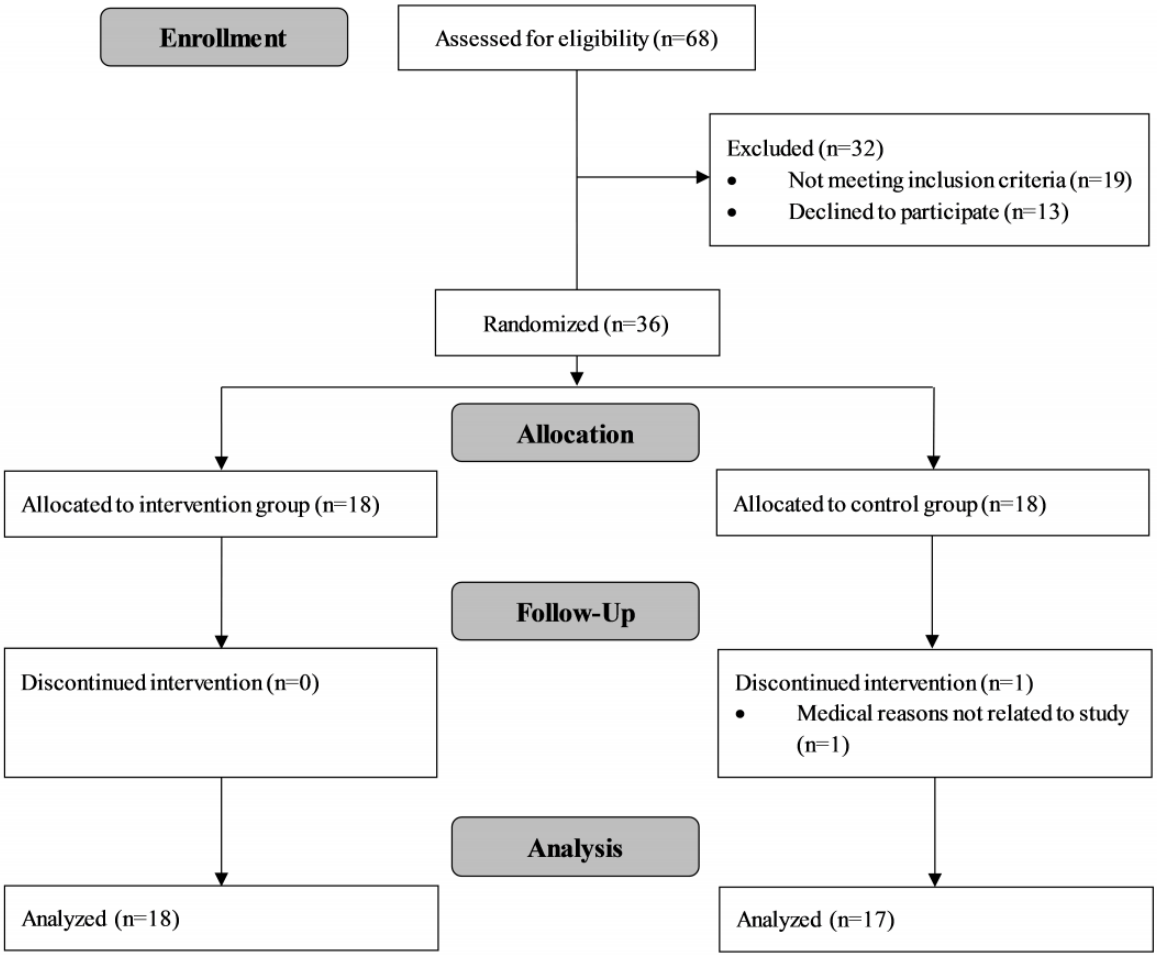


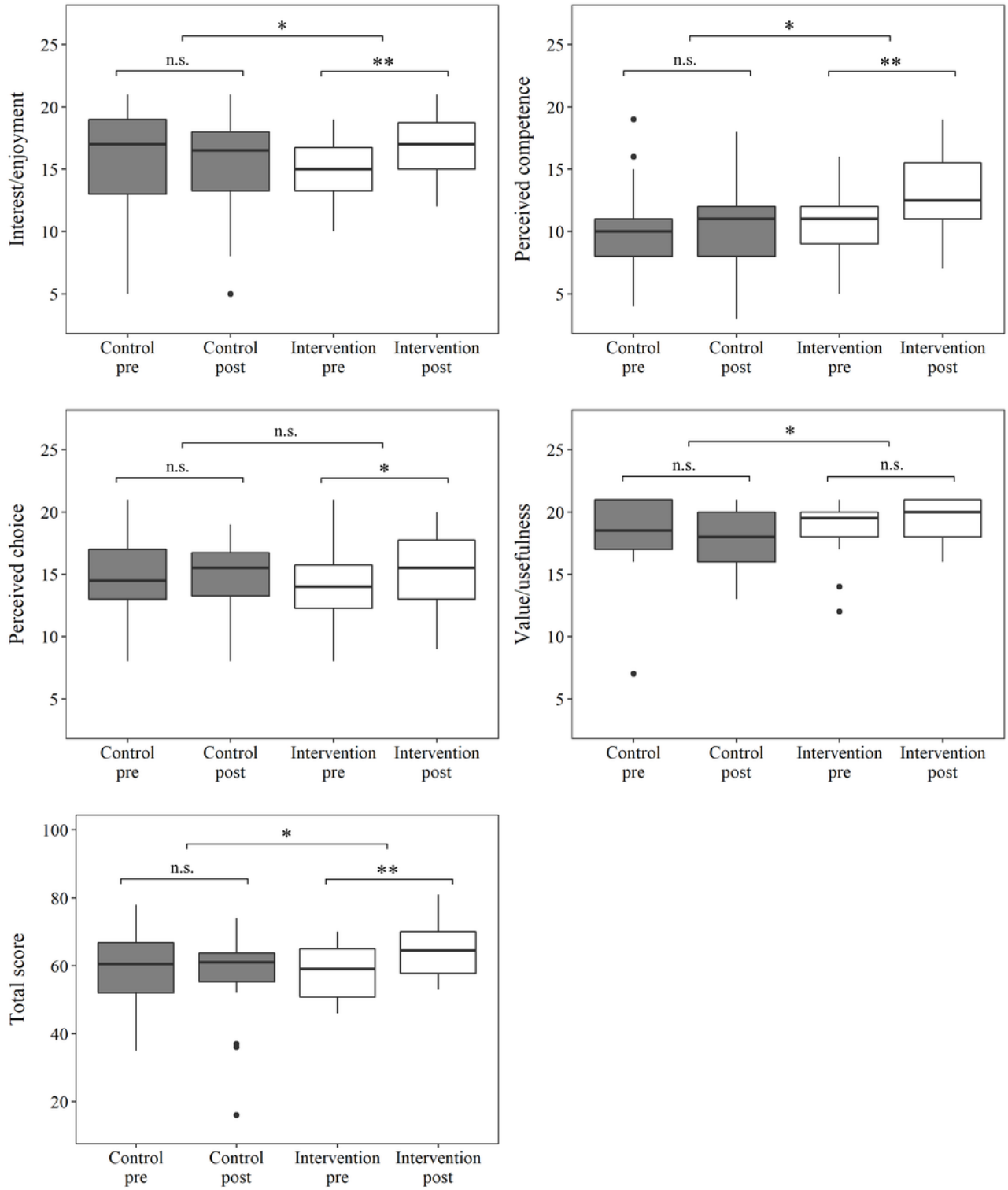
Table 1. Baseline characteristics of study participants.

Characteristic	Intervention (n=18)		Control (n=18)	
	n	Mean (SD)	n	Mean (SD)
Sex				
Female	8	—[a]	9	—
Male	10	—	9	—
Age (years)	18	56 (5)	18	58 (6)
Height (m)	18	171 (7)	18	172 (8)
Weight (kg)	18	93 (12)	18	100 (16)
Body mass index (kg/m^2)	18	32 (4)	18	34 (5)
Fat mass (%)	18	38 (7)	18	38 (7)
Moderate-to-vigorous physical activity (min/week)	18	39 (34)	18	37 (31)
Diabetes duration (years)	18	4 (4)	18	5 (4)

[a]Not applicable.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 2. Illustration of the group-dependent change in total Intrinsic Motivation Inventory score and for the subscales "interest/enjoyment", "perceived competence", "perceived choice", and "value/usefulness". Pre: value at baseline; Post: value after the 24-week intervention period; n.s., not significant. *P<.05, **P<.001.



Physical Activity Adherence

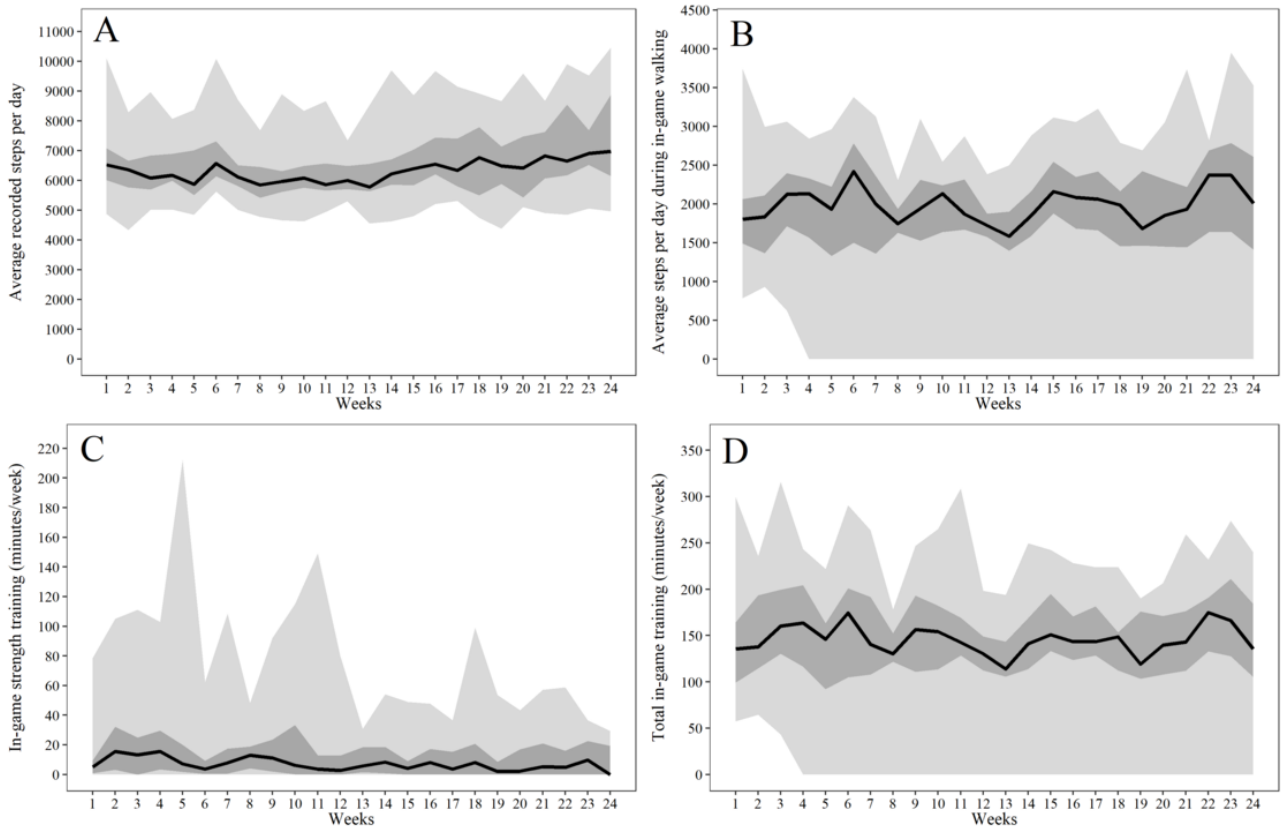
Figure 3 illustrates the usage data regarding daily PA as well as patterns and total duration of in-game training as median, IQR, and range. On an average, the participants' phones recorded 6559 (SD 1182) steps per day during the 24-week intervention period. The weekly steps during in-game walking, averaged per day, are also shown in Figure 3, with an average of 1893 (SD 723) daily steps. Participants performed an average of 4.9 (SD 1.3) in-game walking trainings per week (average duration of 26.8 [SD 8.2] minutes per training), leading to a total average duration of 131.1 (SD 48.7) minutes of in-game walking per week. The analysis of the stride cadence revealed that on an average, 83.7% (SD 3.5%) of all in-game walking was done at a cadence of ≥100 steps/minute, indicating an

XSL•FO
RenderX

average weekly amount of 109.8 (SD 43.4) minutes of moderate-to-vigorous-intensity in-game walking. One participant stopped playing the game after the third week and consequently did not produce any usage data beyond that time. We did not exclude this participant from the analyses because we consider nonuse as important of an outcome as regular use. Participants engaged in an average of 6.8 (SD 6.4) strength workouts per week with a total average duration of 15.3 (SD 24.6) minutes per week. In total, participants used the game for an average of 143.1 (SD 59.1) minutes of training per week. Overall 70.4% of strength workouts and 96.5% of walking workouts were completed, and 82.6% of all in-game workout reminders led to a completed work out on the same day.

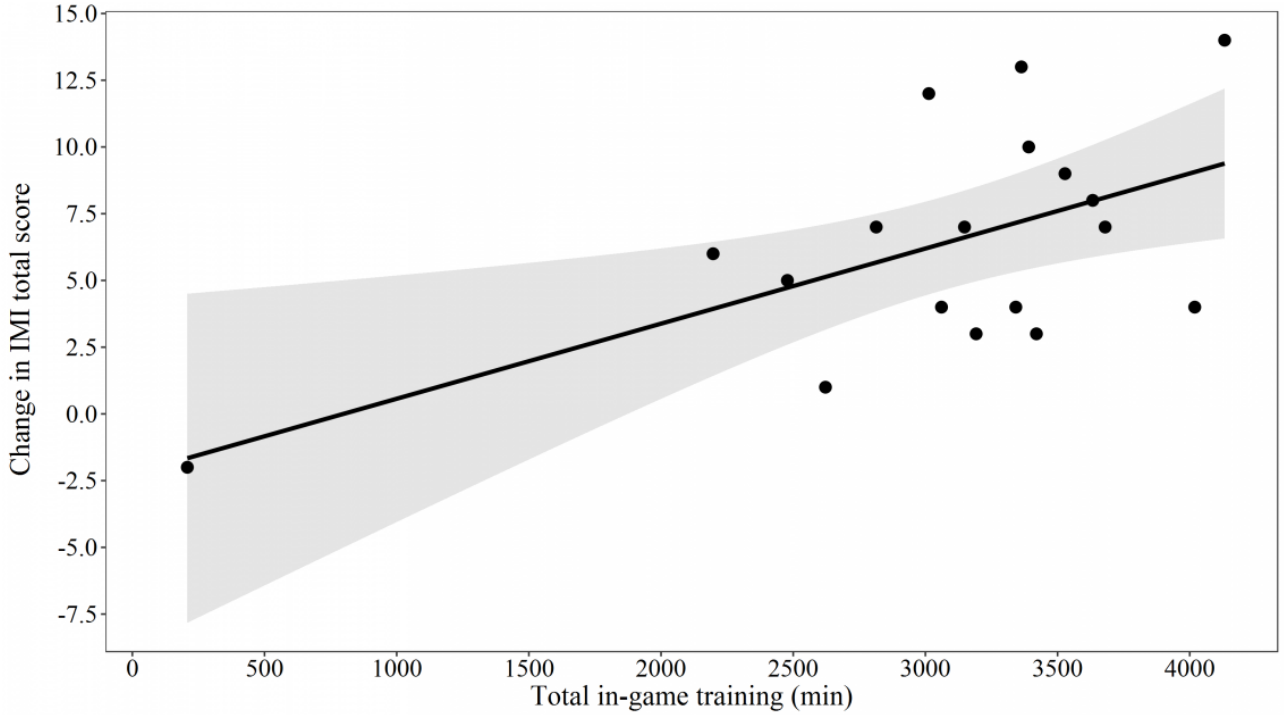
The linear regression model (Figure 4) showed a significant positive association between total in-game training (minutes) and change in IMI total score (beta=0.0028; 95% CI 0.0007-0.0049; P=.01; R^2=0.34). This indicates that for every additional 30 minutes of in-game training per week during the 24-week intervention period, the total IMI score increased by 2.03 points (95% CI 0.54-3.51).

Figure 3. Illustration of phone-recorded physical activity data during the intervention period. A: weekly average of total steps per day, B: weekly average of steps per day during in-game training, C: average duration (minutes) of in-game strength training per week, D: total duration (minutes) of in-game training per week.



XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 4. Linear regression model illustrating the relationship between total in-game training (minutes) and change in the Intrinsic Motivation Inventory total score. IMI: Intrinsic Motivation Inventory.



Discussion

Principal Findings

The results of this randomized controlled trial show that a novel smartphone game, whose storyline is based on established motivational elements and behavior change techniques, can significantly improve intrinsic PA motivation and lead to stable increases in PA in inactive patients with type 2 diabetes over a 24-week period. Participants in the intervention group showed significant increases in the IMI total score and the subscales "interest/enjoyment,""perceived competence," and "perceived choice," indicating improvements in true PA-related intrinsic motivation and factors that predict intrinsic motivation. There was no significant change in the "value/usefulness" subscale in the intervention group; however, it is noteworthy that the baseline value of this intrinsic motivation-predicting subscale was relatively high (18.7 points) and thus did not leave a lot of room for improvement in a scale with a maximum score of 21 points. The average recorded time of 143 minutes of total in-game training per week during the intervention phase underlines the game's strong potential in motivating formerly inactive patients with type 2 diabetes (39 minutes of moderate-to-vigorous PA per week at baseline) to meet and sustainably adhere to established PA recommendations [4]; this level also confirmed our hypothesis that the game-induced increases in intrinsic PA motivation would lead to an improved PA adherence.

Interpretation of Results

Intrinsic PA motivation increased significantly in the intervention group during the 24-week intervention period. A comparison of the magnitude of these improvements with other studies is difficult, since no studies used IMI to assess changes in intrinsic motivation in game-based interventions that promote PA. However, a cross-sectional study [36] showed that enjoyment and perceived competence of performing a television exercise program (ie, higher intrinsic motivation) are the most predictive factors of more frequent participation in the program. The recorded in-game training data in our study support this finding. By illustrating the direct impact of the game-induced increase in intrinsic PA motivation on the weekly PA behavior, the usage data provide a more tangible meaning to the shown increase in the relatively abstract IMI scores, extending beyond the primarily predictive value of the IMI.

Analysis of the recorded usage data further shows that participants walked an average of 1893 steps per day during in-game training. This is distinctly higher than the amount reported for other PA-promoting smartphone games such as Pokémon GO, even when assuming that the reported maximal increase of 955 steps per day was entirely attributable to Pokémon GO-related walking [13]. Further, in contrast to Pokémon GO, which showed a gradual decline in daily steps back to baseline values after only 6 weeks of the abovementioned initial increase in daily PA, the amount of both in-game steps and overall recorded daily steps in our study was considerably more consistent. Average daily in-game steps between 1619 and 2206 throughout the intervention period indicate a substantially better PA adherence that is especially meaningful when considering the distinctly longer timeframe of 24 weeks. The stable, objectively measured increases in weekly PA during the intervention period, along with the positive association between total in-game training (minutes) and change in IMI score, further confirm the previously indicated [25,36] importance of pursuing improvements in intrinsic motivation through increased PA enjoyment especially in behavioral interventions targeting inactive and unmotivated individuals. As this smartphone game is a motivating and enjoyable experience, the subjectively perceived cost of PA is

XSL•FO
RenderX

reduced and people are encouraged to engage in regular PA based on their personal intrinsic motivation [14,43]. Thus, our game's narrative and gameplay may be more elaborate and the motivational elements incorporated into our storyline may be more successful in motivating players for long-term use as compared to Pokémon GO. It is further possible that our approach of tailoring the in-game PA recommendations and exercises to the fitness level of each player prevented feelings of incapability and failure that result from overwhelming PA volumes and intensities and instead enabled players to experience PA-related competence by allowing them to complete suitable workouts and meet appropriate and realistic PA goals. The effectiveness of our game is highlighted by the fact that 83.7% of all in-game walking (110 minutes/week) was of moderate-to-vigorous intensity (≥100 steps/minute) and therefore most likely suitable to improve aerobic fitness [44] and prevent morbidity and premature mortality [45]. This weekly amount of moderate-to-vigorous-intensity walking is equal to an average duration of 15.6 minutes per day, which has been shown to be associated with a 14% reduction in all-cause mortality and has therefore been proposed as the minimum amount of PA required to extend life expectancy [46].

The average amount of time spent in in-game strength exercises was distinctly lower than that spent in in-game walking throughout the intervention period. Although the completion rate of strength workouts was considerably lower than that of walking workouts (70.4% vs 96.5%), the shorter average engagement in strength workouts was a factor of how these workouts were designed. In contrast to walking workouts, which were designed to be of sufficient intensity and duration to improve aerobic fitness [4,44] while avoiding a demotivating physical overload, strength workouts were designed as brief bouts of activity to interrupt prolonged times of sedentary behavior that could be easily integrated into the daily routine and performed anywhere without extensive equipment. This design choice is supported by recent findings, showing that interrupting prolonged sitting by brief bouts (2-5 minutes) of PA every 20-30 minutes can yield improvements in glycemic control in inactive individuals with an impaired glucose regulation for up to 22 hours [47,48]. On an average, participants made use of this design feature approximately seven times per week, with an average duration of approximately 2.5 minutes per workout, and thereby made clinically relevant changes to their sedentary daily routine.

Overall, the game encouraged an average of 143 minutes of in-game activity per week and supported patients with type 2 diabetes who were physically inactive for many years, in adopting and adhering to a physically active lifestyle that corresponds to established PA guidelines [4].

Limitations and Implications for Future Research

A limitation of this study is that we have no objectively measured record of any additional PA beyond the phone-recorded PA. Although participants used the game extensively as a training tool and accrued close to the guideline-recommended amount of 150 minutes of moderate-intensity PA per week during in-game training alone, it would have been interesting to see if participants engaged in any additional structured, moderate-intensity PA outside of the game. Further, although the phones recorded daily steps with a likely high accuracy when they were placed on the body [18], we have no record of the number of steps that were taken when the phones were not placed on the body. Although participants were encouraged to carry their phones with them as much as possible (ie, reminder function of the game), and based on the average daily step counts, it is likely that they did most of the time, it is quite conceivable that especially when participants were at home or work, they did not always carry their phones on them. These periods without phone wear likely led to an underestimation of unknown magnitude of the true number of daily steps. Therefore, future smartphone-based studies should consider measuring daily steps additionally with an accurate accelerometer that has the high potential for good wear-time compliance such as an activity wristband [18]. A further limitation is that we are not certain of which conceptual ideas and motivational elements incorporated into the game have indeed caused the increased intrinsic PA motivation and led to the improved PA behavior. Although it is justifiable to argue that the ensemble of all behavior change mechanics was crucial for the success of the game, a more detailed analysis would have provided important knowledge for future game designs. Finally, a follow-up assessment after an appropriate interim period should be considered to evaluate the effectiveness of the game regarding the sustainability of the improvements in PA adherence beyond the 24-week intervention period.

Conclusions

In summary, our randomized controlled trial shows that a novel smartphone exergame that incorporates established motivational elements and personalized PA recommendations in the storyline can generate significant increases in intrinsic PA motivation in inactive individuals with type 2 diabetes. The clinical relevance of the game-induced increases in intrinsic PA motivation is highlighted by the associated *de facto* and stable improvements in PA adherence during the 24-week intervention period that demonstrate the game's suitability for successfully encouraging persistently sedentary individuals to meet and adhere to established PA guidelines. The combination of playful elements and an individualized PA promotion has high potential for success in other inactive, unmotivated target groups with and without chronic diseases.

Acknowledgments

We thank Promotion Software GmbH for providing technical support in programming the game application "Mission: Schweinehund" and during the intervention period. We are grateful to Novartis Pharma GmbH for the financial support during the development of the game application and RMIT University for providing support. We also thank all the participants for their

XSL•FO
RenderX

time and effort, which was critical to the successful completion of this research. This research was funded by the Swiss National Science Foundation (SNSF grant no. 166214).

Authors' Contributions

CH, AST, and SPW specified the research plan for the development and evaluation of the game concept. CH and AST initiated, planned, and conceptualized the present study and applied for the research grant. CH, CK, and KK were involved in the recruitment of participants and data collection and contributed to the discussion. CH and DI performed statistical analyses and created the tables and figures. CH, AST, and SPW wrote the manuscript. All authors reviewed and edited the manuscript and approved the final version to be submitted for publication.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

CONSORT - EHEALTH checklist (V 1.6.1).

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 149KB - games_v7i1e11444_app1.pdf]

References

1. World Health Organization. 2017. Diabetes URL: https://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/diabetes [accessed 2018-12-19] [WebCite Cache ID 74mgXAAxk]
2. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. 2017. National Diabetes Statistics Report Internet URL: https://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/data/statistics/statistics-report.html [accessed 2018-12-19] [WebCite Cache ID 74mgbJUTK]
3. Li R, Bilik D, Brown MB, Zhang P, Ettner SL, Ackermann RT, et al. Medical costs associated with type 2 diabetes complications and comorbidities. Am J Manag Care 2013 May;19(5):421-430 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 23781894]
4. Colberg SR, Sigal RJ, Yardley JE, Riddell MC, Dunstan DW, Dempsey PC, et al. Physical Activity/Exercise and Diabetes: A Position Statement of the American Diabetes Association. Diabetes Care 2016 Dec;39(11):2065-2079. [doi: 10.2337/dc16-1728] [Medline: 27926890]
5. Morrato EH, Hill JO, Wyatt HR, Ghushchyan V, Sullivan PW. Physical activity in U.S. adults with diabetes and at risk for developing diabetes, 2003. Diabetes Care 2007 Feb;30(2):203-209. [doi: 10.2337/dc06-1128] [Medline: 17259482]
6. Lee I, Shiroma EJ, Lobelo F, Puska P, Blair SN, Katzmarzyk PT, Lancet Physical Activity Series Working Group. Effect of physical inactivity on major non-communicable diseases worldwide: an analysis of burden of disease and life expectancy. Lancet 2012 Jul 21;380(9838):219-229 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(12)61031-9] [Medline: 22818936]
7. Wilmot EG, Edwardson CL, Achana FA, Davies MJ, Gorely T, Gray LJ, et al. Sedentary time in adults and the association with diabetes, cardiovascular disease and death: systematic review and meta-analysis. Diabetologia 2012 Nov;55(11):2895-2905. [doi: 10.1007/s00125-012-2677-z] [Medline: 22890825]
8. Korkiakangas EE, Alahuhta MA, Husman PM, Keinänen-Kiukaanniemi S, Taanila AM, Laitinen JH. Motivators and barriers to exercise among adults with a high risk of type 2 diabetes--a qualitative study. Scand J Caring Sci 2011 Mar;25(1):62-69. [doi: 10.1111/j.1471-6712.2010.00791.x] [Medline: 20384973]
9. Duclos M, Dejager S, Postel-Vinay N, di Nicola S, Quéré S, Fiquet B. Physical activity in patients with type 2 diabetes and hypertension--insights into motivations and barriers from the MOBILE study. Vasc Health Risk Manag 2015;11:361-371 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2147/VHRM.S84832] [Medline: 26170686]
10. Dacey M, Baltzell A, Zaichkowsky L. Older adults' intrinsic and extrinsic motivation toward physical activity. Am J Health Behav 2008;32(6):570-582. [doi: 10.5555/ajhb.2008.32.6.570] [Medline: 18442337]
11. Koponen AM, Simonsen N, Suominen S. Determinants of physical activity among patients with type 2 diabetes: the role of perceived autonomy support, autonomous motivation and self-care competence. Psychol Health Med 2017 Dec;22(3):332-344. [doi: 10.1080/13548506.2016.1154179] [Medline: 26952696]
12. Kempf K, Martin S. Autonomous exercise game use improves metabolic control and quality of life in type 2 diabetes patients - a randomized controlled trial. BMC Endocr Disord 2013 Dec 10;13:57 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1186/1472-6823-13-57] [Medline: 24321337]
13. Howe KB, Suharlim C, Ueda P, Howe D, Kawachi I, Rimm EB. Gotta catch'em all! Pokémon GO and physical activity among young adults: difference in differences study. BMJ 2016 Dec 13;355:i6270 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 27965211]
14. Walz S, Deterding S, editors. Gamification and Health. In: The Gameful World. Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press; 2015:597-623.
15. Baranowski T, Buday R, Thompson D, Lyons EJ, Lu AS, Baranowski J. Developing Games for Health Behavior Change: Getting Started. Games Health J 2013 Aug;2(4):183-190 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1089/g4h.2013.0048] [Medline: 24443708]

XSL•FO
RenderX

16. Michie S, Ashford S, Sniehotta FF, Dombrowski SU, Bishop A, French DP. A refined taxonomy of behaviour change techniques to help people change their physical activity and healthy eating behaviours: the CALO-RE taxonomy. Psychol Health 2011 Nov;26(11):1479-1498. [doi: 10.1080/08870446.2010.540664] [Medline: 21678185]
17. WMA Declaration of Helsinki - Ethical Principles for Medical Research Involving Human Subjects Internet. URL: https://www.wma.net/policies-post/wma-declaration-of-helsinki-ethical-principles-for-medical-research-involving-human-subjects/ [accessed 2018-12-19] [WebCite Cache ID 74mhDVPJz]
18. Höchsmann C, Knaier R, Eymann J, Hintermann J, Infanger D, Schmidt-Trucksäss A. Validity of activity trackers, smartphones, and phone applications to measure steps in various walking conditions. Scand J Med Sci Sports 2018 Jul;28(7):1818-1827. [doi: 10.1111/sms.13074] [Medline: 29460319]
19. Tudor-Locke C, Craig CL, Brown WJ, Clemes SA, De Cocker K, Giles-Corti B, et al. How many steps/day are enough? For adults. Int J Behav Nutr Phys Act 2011;8:79 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1186/1479-5868-8-79] [Medline: 21798015]
20. Höchsmann C, Walz SP, Schäfer J, Holopainen J, Hanssen H, Schmidt-Trucksäss A. Mobile Exergaming for Health-Effects of a serious game application for smartphones on physical activity and exercise adherence in type 2 diabetes mellitus-study protocol for a randomized controlled trial. Trials 2017 Dec 06;18(1):103 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1186/s13063-017-1853-3] [Medline: 28264717]
21. Schneider SH, Khachadurian AK, Amorosa LF, Clemow L, Ruderman NB. Ten-year experience with an exercise-based outpatient life-style modification program in the treatment of diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care 1992 Nov;15(11):1800-1810. [Medline: 1468318]
22. Frey I, Berg A, Grathwohl D, Keul J. [Freiburg Questionnaire of physical activity--development, evaluation and application]. Soz Praventivmed 1999;44(2):55-64. [Medline: 10407953]
23. American College of Sports Medicine. ACSM's guidelines for exercise testing and prescription. 9th Ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins Health; 2014.
24. Deci EL, Ryan RM. Intrinsic motivation and self-determination in human behavior. New York, NY: Plenum; 1985.
25. Hagger M, Chatzisarantis N. Self-determination Theory and the psychology of exercise. International Review of Sport and Exercise Psychology 2008 Mar;1(1):79-103. [doi: 10.1080/17509840701827437] [Medline: 26281194]
26. Ryan RM, Rigby CS, Przybylski A. The Motivational Pull of Video Games: A Self-Determination Theory Approach. Motivation and Emotion 2006 Nov 29;30(4):344-360. [doi: 10.1007/s11031-006-9051-8]
27. Rowinski R, Dabrowski A, Kostka T. Gardening as the dominant leisure time physical activity (LTPA) of older adults from a post-communist country. The results of the population-based PolSenior Project from Poland. Arch Gerontol Geriatr 2015;60(3):486-491. [doi: 10.1016/j.archger.2015.01.011] [Medline: 25661458]
28. Gerling K, Livingston I, Nacke L, Mandryk R. Full-body Motion-based Game Interaction for Older Adults. In: Proceedings of the SIGCHI Conference on Human Factors in Computing Systems. 2012 Presented at: SIGCHI Conference on Human Factors in Computing Systems; 2012; Austin, TX p. A. [doi: 10.1145/2207676.2208324]
29. De Schutter B, Vandenabeele V. Meaningful Play in Elderly Life. In: Proceedings of the 58th annual Conference of the International Communication Association. 2008 Presented at: 58th annual Conference of the International Communication Association; 2008; Montreal, Canada.
30. Garber CE, Blissmer B, Deschenes MR, Franklin BA, Lamonte MJ, Lee I, American College of Sports Medicine. American College of Sports Medicine position stand. Quantity and quality of exercise for developing and maintaining cardiorespiratory, musculoskeletal, and neuromotor fitness in apparently healthy adults: guidance for prescribing exercise. Med Sci Sports Exerc 2011 Jul;43(7):1334-1359. [doi: 10.1249/MSS.0b013e318213fefb] [Medline: 21694556]
31. Vanhees L, Geladas N, Hansen D, Kouidi E, Niebauer J, Reiner Z, et al. Importance of characteristics and modalities of physical activity and exercise in the management of cardiovascular health in individuals with cardiovascular risk factors: recommendations from the EACPR. Part II. Eur J Prev Cardiol 2012 Oct;19(5):1005-1033. [doi: 10.1177/1741826711430926] [Medline: 22637741]
32. Strassmann A, Steurer-Stey C, Lana KD, Zoller M, Turk AJ, Suter P, et al. Population-based reference values for the 1-min sit-to-stand test. Int J Public Health 2013 Dec;58(6):949-953. [doi: 10.1007/s00038-013-0504-z] [Medline: 23974352]
33. ATS Committee on Proficiency Standards for Clinical Pulmonary Function Laboratories. ATS statement: guidelines for the six-minute walk test. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2002 Jul 01;166(1):111-117. [doi: 10.1164/ajrccm.166.1.at1102] [Medline: 12091180]
34. Casey D, De Civita M, Dasgupta K. Understanding physical activity facilitators and barriers during and following a supervised exercise programme in Type 2 diabetes: a qualitative study. Diabet Med 2010 Jan;27(1):79-84. [doi: 10.1111/j.1464-5491.2009.02873.x] [Medline: 20121893]
35. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Physical Activity Guidelines for Americans, 2nd Edition. 2018. URL: https://health.gov/paguidelines/second-edition/pdf/Physical_Activity_Guidelines_2nd_edition.pdf [accessed 2018-12-19] [WebCite Cache ID 74mj0Qgwc]
36. Meis JJ, Kremers SP, Bouman MP. Television Viewing Does Not Have to Be Sedentary: Motivation to Participate in a TV Exercise Program. Journal of Obesity 2012. [doi: 10.1155/2012/752820] [Medline: 22187637]

XSL•FO
RenderX

37. Buckworth J, Lee RE, Regan G, Schneider LK, DiClemente CC. Decomposing intrinsic and extrinsic motivation for exercise: Application to stages of motivational readiness. Psychology of Sport and Exercise 2007 Jul;8(4):441-461. [doi: 10.1016/j.psychsport.2006.06.007]
38. McAuley E, Duncan T, Tammen VV. Psychometric properties of the Intrinsic Motivation Inventory in a competitive sport setting: a confirmatory factor analysis. Res Q Exerc Sport 1989 Mar;60(1):48-58. [doi: 10.1080/02701367.1989.10607413] [Medline: 2489825]
39. Deci EL, Eghrari H, Patrick BC, Leone DR. Facilitating internalization: the self-determination theory perspective. J Pers 1994 Mar;62(1):119-142. [Medline: 8169757]
40. Markland D, Hardy L. On the factorial and construct validity of the Intrinsic Motivation Inventory: conceptual and operational concerns. Res Q Exerc Sport 1997 Mar;68(1):20-32. [doi: 10.1080/02701367.1997.10608863] [Medline: 9094760]
41. Silva MN, Vieira PN, Coutinho SR, Minderico CS, Matos MG, Sardinha LB, et al. Using self-determination theory to promote physical activity and weight control: a randomized controlled trial in women. J Behav Med 2010 Apr;33(2):110-122. [doi: 10.1007/s10865-009-9239-y] [Medline: 20012179]
42. Vickers AJ, Altman DG. Statistics notes: Analysing controlled trials with baseline and follow up measurements. BMJ 2001 Nov 10;323(7321):1123-1124 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 11701584]
43. Deterding S. The Lens of Intrinsic Skill Atoms: A Method for Gameful Design. Human–Computer Interaction 2015 May 15;30(3-4):294-335. [doi: 10.1080/07370024.2014.993471] [Medline: 26281194]
44. Anton SD, Duncan GE, Limacher MC, Martin AD, Perri MG. How much walking is needed to improve cardiorespiratory fitness? An examination of the 2008 Physical Activity Guidelines for Americans. Res Q Exerc Sport 2011 Jun;82(2):365-370 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1080/02701367.2011.10599766] [Medline: 21699118]
45. Sadarangani KP, Hamer M, Mindell JS, Coombs NA, Stamatakis E. Physical activity and risk of all-cause and cardiovascular disease mortality in diabetic adults from Great Britain: pooled analysis of 10 population-based cohorts. Diabetes Care 2014 Apr;37(4):1016-1023. [doi: 10.2337/dc13-1816] [Medline: 24652727]
46. Wen CP, Wai JPM, Tsai MK, Yang YC, Cheng TYD, Lee M, et al. Minimum amount of physical activity for reduced mortality and extended life expectancy: a prospective cohort study. The Lancet 2011 Oct 1;378(9798):1244-1253. [doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(11)60749-6] [Medline: 21846575]
47. Henson J, Davies MJ, Bodicoat DH, Edwardson CL, Gill JMR, Stensel DJ, et al. Breaking Up Prolonged Sitting With Standing or Walking Attenuates the Postprandial Metabolic Response in Postmenopausal Women: A Randomized Acute Study. Diabetes Care 2016 Jan;39(1):130-138. [doi: 10.2337/dc15-1240] [Medline: 26628415]
48. Dempsey PC, Blankenship JM, Larsen RN, Sacre JW, Sethi P, Straznicky NE, et al. Interrupting prolonged sitting in type 2 diabetes: nocturnal persistence of improved glycaemic control. Diabetologia 2017 Dec;60(3):499-507. [doi: 10.1007/s00125-016-4169-z] [Medline: 27942799]

Abbreviations

IMI: Intrinsic Motivation Inventory
IQR: interquartile range
PA: physical activity

Edited by G Eysenbach; submitted 10.07.18; peer-reviewed by A Staiano, M Kelley; comments to author 07.10.18; revised version received 19.11.18; accepted 09.12.18; published 13.02.19.

Please cite as:
Höchsmann C, Infanger D, Klenk C, Königstein K, Walz SP, Schmidt-Trucksäss A
Effectiveness of a Behavior Change Technique–Based Smartphone Game to Improve Intrinsic Motivation and Physical Activity Adherence in Patients With Type 2 Diabetes: Randomized Controlled Trial
JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e11444
URL: http://games.jmir.org/2019/1/e11444/
doi:10.2196/11444
PMID:30758293

©Christoph Höchsmann, Denis Infanger, Christopher Klenk, Karsten Königstein, Steffen P Walz, Arno Schmidt-Trucksäss. Originally published in JMIR Serious Games (http://games.jmir.org), 13.02.2019. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR Serious Games, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://games.jmir.org, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Original Paper

Active Video Games for Rehabilitation in Respiratory Conditions: Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis

Joshua Simmich[1,2], BSc (Hons), MPhtySt; Anthony J Deacon[1,3], BSc (Biomed), BIT, GCELead, MBBS, MIT, MBus; Trevor G Russell[1,2], BPhty, PhD (Physiotherapy)

[1]Centre for Research Excellence in Telehealth, University of Queensland, Brisbane, Australia

[2]School of Health and Rehabilitation Sciences, University of Queensland, Brisbane, Australia

[3]School of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science, Queensland University of Technology, Brisbane, Australia

Corresponding Author:
Joshua Simmich, BSc (Hons), MPhtySt
Centre for Research Excellence in Telehealth
University of Queensland
St Lucia
Brisbane,
Australia
Phone: 61 7 3346 9633
Email: joshua.simmich@uqconnect.edu.au

Abstract

Background: Exercise and physical activity are key components of treatment for chronic respiratory diseases. However, the level of physical activity and adherence to exercise programs are low in people with these diseases. Active video games (AVGs) may provide a more engaging alternative to traditional forms of exercise.

Objective: This review examines the effectiveness of game-based interventions on physiological outcome measures, as well as adherence and enjoyment in subjects with chronic respiratory diseases.

Methods: A systematic search of the literature was conducted, with full texts and abstracts included where they involved an AVG intervention for participants diagnosed with respiratory conditions. A narrative synthesis of included studies was performed. Additionally, meta-analysis comparing AVGs with traditional exercise was undertaken for 4 outcome measures: mean heart rate (HR) during exercise, peripheral blood oxygen saturation (S_pO_2) during exercise, dyspnea induced by the exercise, and enjoyment of the exercise.

Results: A total of 13 full-text papers corresponding to 12 studies were included in the review. Interventions predominantly used games released for the Nintendo Wii (8 studies) and Microsoft Xbox Kinect (3 studies). There were 5 studies that examined the acute effects of a single session of AVGs and 7 studies that examined the long-term effects after multiple sessions of AVGs. Trials conducted over more than 1 session varied in duration between 3 and 12 weeks. In these, AVG interventions were associated with either similar or slightly greater improvements in outcomes such as exercise capacity when compared with a traditional exercise control, and they also generally demonstrated improvements over baseline or nonintervention comparators. There were a few studies of unsupervised AVG interventions, but the reported adherence was high and maintained throughout the intervention period. Additionally, AVGs were generally reported to be well liked and considered feasible by participants. For outcome measures measured during a single exercise session, there was no significant difference between an AVG and traditional exercise for HR (mean difference 1.44 beats per minute, 95% CI –14.31 to 17.18), S_pO_2 (mean difference 1.12 percentage points, 95% CI –1.91 to 4.16), and dyspnea (mean difference 0.43 Borg units, 95% CI –0.79 to 1.66), but AVGs were significantly more enjoyable than traditional exercise (Hedges *g* standardized mean difference 1.36, 95% CI 0.04-2.68).

Conclusions: This review provides evidence that AVG interventions, undertaken for several weeks, can provide similar or greater improvements in exercise capacity and other outcomes as traditional exercise. Within a single session of cardiovascular exercise, an AVG can evoke similar physiological responses as traditional exercise modalities but is more enjoyable to subjects with chronic respiratory diseases. However, there is very limited evidence for adherence and effectiveness in long-term unsupervised trials, which should be the focus of future research.

(JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e10116) doi:10.2196/10116

XSL•FO
RenderX

KEYWORDS

video games; exercise; physical activity; COPD; cystic fibrosis; asthma

Introduction

Background

Chronic respiratory diseases such as asthma [1], chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) [2], and cystic fibrosis (CF) [3] represent a significant disease burden globally, accounting for approximately 7% of all global deaths [4]. Recent systematic reviews have shown physical activity and exercise to be beneficial for pulmonary function and health-related quality of life in both asthma [5] and CF [6]. Physical activity is also negatively associated with mortality and exacerbations in COPD [7]. Exercise is a key component of pulmonary rehabilitation for COPD, which a recent systematic review has shown to improve quality of life and exercise capacity in subjects [8]. Exercise-based pulmonary rehabilitation can also be an effective intervention for other respiratory conditions [9,10]. Exercise is prescribed in clinical guidelines for both CF [11] (grade B recommendation) and COPD [12] (strong recommendation).

Physical activity is defined as any bodily movement resulting in energy expenditure, and exercise is a subset of physical activity that is planned, structured, repetitive, and aimed at improving or maintaining physical fitness [13]. Despite the clear evidence for physical activity and exercise in the management of respiratory conditions, adherence in these populations is generally low. Objective measurements indicate that almost half of adults with CF do not achieve 30 minutes of physical activity per day [14]. Similarly, in COPD, pulmonary rehabilitation has attendance and completion rates as low as 70% and 40%, respectively [15,16], and a recent meta-analysis has shown people with COPD are generally severely physically inactive [17]. Low motivation has been identified as a key internal barrier to physical activity in asthma [18], COPD [19], and CF [20], and enjoyment of physical activity has been shown to be a key motivator of exercise in these populations [20-22].

Video games have attracted attention as a novel way of delivering health care interventions with the potential to motivate change in health behaviors [23]. Video games can be designed to incorporate a physical activity or exercise component, and these are known as active video games (AVGs) or exergames [24]. The use of AVGs has been demonstrated in many age groups and clinical conditions as an enjoyable form of rehabilitation [25,26] and can also be designed to encompass other treatments such as airway clearance or spirometry [27-29]. Games used in rehabilitation may either be designed specifically for this purpose or be commercial games designed for recreational exercise that have been adapted by clinicians and researchers for use in rehabilitation.

Reviews of the use of games for purposes such as improving balance in the elderly, rehabilitation of motor function in stroke, or rehabilitation of upper limb functioning in cerebral palsy, have found small effects in favor of games over traditional therapies [25,26]. Several advantages of video games over traditional rehabilitation have been posited, such as objective measurement of performance and progress (eg, time spent playing the game, number of repetitions performed), low cost, and improved motivation and adherence [30]. The results of individual studies have reported that a single session of an AVG was considered more enjoyable than traditional exercise in subjects with CF [31,32] and COPD [33], in keeping with a systematic review that concluded that AVGs are considered enjoyable by many different populations of subjects undergoing rehabilitation [26]. Given the significant positive correlation between emotional judgment (such as enjoyment) of physical activity and frequency of physical activity in healthy adults [34,35], it is likely that interventions that improve enjoyment of exercise will improve adherence to exercise. In healthy populations, studies have found a correlation between enjoyment of an AVG and exercise adherence [36] or energy expenditure during play [37]. However, the relationship among games, enjoyment, adherence, and overall effectiveness is poorly understood, especially in chronic respiratory conditions.

To date, only 1 systematic review specifically examining the use of video games in respiratory conditions exists. This review was limited in scope as it only aimed to review the exercise intensity of AVGs for people with CF [38], and therefore it only included 5 studies. Another broad review of video games in rehabilitation did not include respiratory conditions and instead focused on aging and pathologies such as stroke and Parkinson disease for which there was more evidence [39]. Other broad reviews have focused only on pathologies for which there are randomized controlled trials looking at changes in rehabilitation outcomes over time [25] or only on games aimed at improving motor function rather than cardiorespiratory function [26]. Reviews that have included respiratory conditions have been limited to scoping reviews rather than systematic reviews [40,41].

Objectives

By comparing multiple diseases, this review provides a broader picture of the use of video games for rehabilitation in respiratory conditions than previous reviews. Moreover, it examines evidence more specific to the posited advantages of video games in rehabilitation by investigating not only clinical effectiveness of video games but also their economic feasibility and reported measures of adherence and enjoyment. Additionally, it should provide clinicians and researchers with a unified view of the literature on this newly emerging field of game-based pulmonary rehabilitation. The primary aim of this review was to evaluate the effectiveness of AVGs for 3 categories of outcomes: (1) clinical outcomes, (2) economic feasibility, and (3) patient enjoyment and adherence. The secondary aim was to compare AVGs with traditional exercise for the aforementioned outcome measures. This review will examine the hypotheses that (1) AVGs improve clinical outcomes and are economically feasible and enjoyable and (2) that AVGs produce equivalent clinical outcomes as traditional exercise programs but are more cost-effective, more enjoyable, and have higher adherence.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Methods

Search Strategy

Studies were identified by searching the following electronic databases: PubMed, Scopus, Web of Science, EMBASE, Cumulative Index to Nursing and Allied Health Literature (CINAHL), and Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) Xplore. Medical subject headings terms and equivalent subject headings were used for PubMed, EMBASE, CINAHL, and IEEE Xplore. Search terms for AVGs (eg, "video games," "computer games," "digital games," and "gamification") were combined with terms for respiratory diseases (eg, "lung," "pulmonary," "respiratory," "airway," "cystic fibrosis," and "COPD") derived from key terms for respiratory diseases listed in the Cochrane Airways Group Search Strategies document [42]. For IEEE Xplore, broader search terms were found to be suitable. There were no date or language restrictions placed on the search, though all search terms were in English. Full details of the final search strategies for each database are available in Multimedia Appendix 1.

The search was completed on October 30, 2017, and each database was searched from inception to the date of search. Search results were imported into Zotero (Version 4.0, George Mason University) and EndNote (Version 18.0, Clarivate Analytics) to automatically remove duplicate citations, and the results were further searched by hand to remove remaining duplicates. The combined list of citations was then imported into Covidence, a Web-based review manager (Veritas Health Innovation) for screening of titles, abstracts, and full texts. Hand-searches of reference lists and citation searches were also conducted for literature citing included studies.

Study Selection

The inclusion and exclusion criteria are outlined in Textboxes 1 and 2. Two reviewers (JS and AD) independently screened the titles and abstracts of identified papers according to inclusion and exclusion criteria, and potentially relevant papers were identified for full-text screening. Full-text papers were retrieved and screened independently by these 2 reviewers, and reasons were given for all excluded citations. In both stages of screening, disagreements were resolved by consensus or in consultation with a third reviewer (TR) if disagreement persisted.

Data Extraction and Quality Assessment

One reviewer (JS) extracted data and assessed the quality of each included study. The extracted data and the results of quality assessment were then independently checked by a second reviewer (AD) for accuracy and completeness. Quality was assessed using the *Checklist for Measuring Quality* assessment tool by Downs and Black [43]. Where multiple papers reported data from the same study and cohort, they were considered as 1 study for the purposes of data extraction and quality assessment.

Data Synthesis

Only studies that compared AVGs with a control exercise rather than an exercise test were included in the meta-analysis (quantitative synthesis) and only for outcome measures reported at similar time points in at least 3 different studies. A narrative synthesis was undertaken for all other studies.

A random effects model was used to assess all outcome measures. The method of Hartung-Knapp-Sidik-Jonkman (HKSJ) [44,45] was employed. This method is recommended over the more common DerSimonian and Laird (DSL) method [46,47] for meta-analyses where only few studies are available (the DSL method was also calculated for comparison). Pooled effect sizes were reported as weighted mean differences among treatments in the original units when possible, with a 95% CI. If studies used different scales, effect sizes were expressed as standardized mean differences using Hedges *g* [48], also with a 95% CI. Statistical heterogeneity was estimated using the point estimate and 95% CI of the I^2 statistic.

Textbox 1. Inclusion criteria.

- Is an experimental or quasi-experimental study of an intervention including quantitative data. This includes studies of the following designs: randomized controlled trials, quasi-randomized trials, interrupted time series, controlled before-and-after studies, uncontrolled before-and-after studies
- Participants are predominantly people diagnosed with respiratory conditions. Respiratory conditions include any disease under the National Library of Medicine Medical Subject Headings term "Respiratory Tract Diseases" (C08), including lung cancer (C08.381.540), cystic fibrosis (C08.381.187), asthma (C08.127.108), and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (C08.381.495.389).
- Includes an intervention involving any form of video game, console game, virtual reality game, or gamified mobile app or computer program that requires players to perform a physical action that forms part of their rehabilitation, such as perform cardiovascular exercise, use a spirometer, perform airway-clearance techniques

Textbox 2. Exclusion criteria.

- Study is not experimental or does not include quantitative data. Therefore, publications of the following designs are excluded from descriptive and observational studies (case series, case-control, cohort studies, and qualitative research designs), secondary research studies (reviews and meta-analyses), and protocol papers
- Includes only interventions that do not require participants to physically perform rehabilitative actions in order to progress in the game, such as educational games that merely encourage or teach the importance of consistent medication use or physical activity
- Is not a full-text paper published in a peer-reviewed journal

XSL•FO
RenderX

Additionally, 90% CI were calculated as above for those outcome measures where included studies attempted to demonstrate equivalence among interventions (heart rate, dyspnea, and peripheral blood oxygen saturation [S_pO_2]). To demonstrate equivalence with α=.05, the 90% CI must lie between the predetermined equivalence margins [49]. For heart rate (HR) evoked during exercise, we used a difference of 10 beats per minute (bpm) (ie, –10 to +10 bpm) for our equivalence margins as there is no agreed-upon minimum important difference, and 2 previous studies nominated a difference of 10 bpm as important when performing their initial sample size calculations [31,32]. For dyspnea, equivalence margins of 1 unit (ie, –1 to +1) were used, as it has been suggested that the minimum clinically important difference for the modified 11-point (0-10) Borg scale is 1 unit [50]. For S_pO_2, a drop of 4% or more has been used as a definition for exertional oxygen desaturation in CF [51,52] and COPD [53]; therefore, the width of our equivalence margins was set at 4% (ie, –2% to 2%).

Data from crossover trials were treated as paired data in the meta-analysis where raw mean differences could be calculated. An estimate of the within-subject SD was estimated where possible from the reported CIs of the difference among treatments or *P* values from a paired *t* test of the difference among treatments. From the within-subject SD, a within-subject correlation was calculated using methods outlined by Elbourne et al [54]. Where a within-subject correlation could not be calculated, the correlation from another study of similar design was used as an estimate. A sensitivity analysis, where this correlation was altered to either 0 (uncorrelated) or 1 (perfectly correlated), was conducted to test the influence this assumption had on the pooled estimate. Where results had to be reported as standardized mean differences, because of comparison across different scales, data from crossover trials were treated as if it came from independent groups.

Data reported only as median and interquartile range were converted to mean and SD using formulas from Wan et al [55]. Ordinal data, such as that from Likert or Likert-type items, were treated as interval data for the purposes of this meta-analysis. Authors of the studies included in the meta-analysis were contacted for additional information, and, when provided, these additional data were used in place of the summary data reported in the publications.

Data conversions and statistical analysis were performed using R software (Version 3.4.0, R Foundation for Statistical Computing), with meta-analysis using the *metafor* package (Version 1.9-9, Viechtbauer) [56].

Code used to generate the analysis and sections of the paper was written as a dynamic manuscript, using the R package *rmarkdown*, version 1.3 (RStudio Inc) [57], and it is available in Multimedia Appendix 2 for reproducing all data conversions and statistical analysis. Data used in this manuscript are presented in Multimedia Appendices 3 and 4.

Results

Study Selection

Figure 1 shows the Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses (PRISMA) flow diagram [58], which illustrates the screening and selection process. The initial literature search gave a total of 1040 results, with 612 unique records remaining after duplicates were removed—PRISMA flow diagram [58] shown in Figure 1. After screening titles and abstracts, 91 results that met the inclusion criteria remained for full-text assessment. A total of 13 papers passed both the inclusion and exclusion criteria after full-text assessment and were included in the narrative synthesis, which corresponded to 12 studies. The interventions and outcomes studied were heterogeneous, with the meta-analysis including only 4 studies for HR, 3 studies for mean S_pO_2, 3 studies for reported dyspnea, and 3 studies for enjoyment of the exercise interventions. Manual screening of titles listed in the reference lists of included full-text papers did not yield any additional papers. One potential paper was found by citation tracking but did not pass full-text screening.

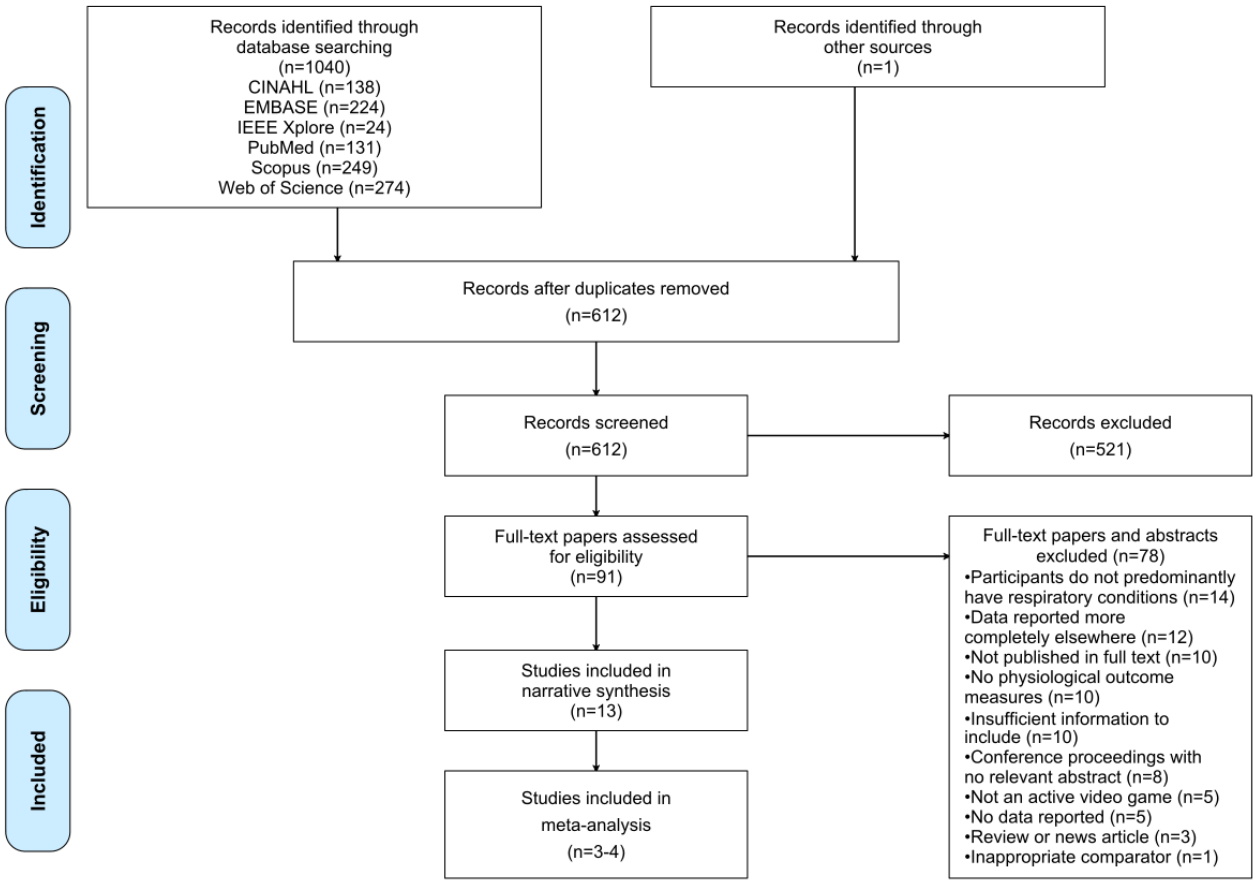
Study Characteristics

There were a total of 292 participants in the 12 full-text papers. Sample sizes ranged from a small observational study of 7 to larger studies with 40 participants (parallel-groups design), 30 participants (crossover-trial), and 32 participants (observational study). In total, 6 studies included participants with CF [27,31,32,59-61], 3 studies included participants with COPD [33,62,63], and 3 with other or mixed respiratory conditions [64-66]. Ages were varied because of the respiratory conditions of interest: studies of asthma included only children, studies of CF included children or young adults, and studies of lung cancer and COPD included only older adults. The randomized experimental studies often used crossover designs [27,31-33,59], with only 3 studies [60,64,66] employing 2 parallel-groups design. Nonrandomized and observational studies represented the remaining 4 studies [61-63,65]. Additional details about each included study, including the specific games played on each device, can be found in Multimedia Appendix 5.

Interventions were predominantly commercially available off-the-shelf AVGs, namely games released for the Nintendo Wii and Microsoft Xbox Kinect. The Wii was used in 8 out of 12 studies [31,33,59,60,62,63,65,66], whereas the Kinect was used in 3 out of 12 studies [32,61,64]. Only 1 study reported the testing of custom-designed hardware and games for respiratory conditions [27].

XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 1. Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses flow diagram of the search process. CINAHL: Cumulative Index to Nursing and Allied Health Literature; IEEE: Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers.



A total of 4 out of 12 included studies reported randomized studies examining the long-term effects of AVGs versus traditional training in respiratory conditions [27,60,64,66]. One study examined the effect of AVGs versus treadmill training in asthma, with training sessions twice a week over 8 weeks [64]. Another examined the effect of AVGs in combination with usual pulmonary rehabilitation compared with usual pulmonary rehabilitation alone, with 3 weeks of pulmonary rehabilitation in both groups but 1 week of AVGs in the final week of the experimental group [66]. A third compared a custom spirometer game with a control device over a 2- to 3-week period, with participants prompted but not required to use the device [27]. There were also 3 studies [62,63,65] that looked at longer-term effects of AVGs but were not randomized and controlled experiments.

There were 5 studies [31-33,59,61] that examined acute effects of a single session of an AVG. For most of these, the AVG was compared with traditional exercises [31-33,64], though some compared AVGs with maximal [61] or submaximal exercise tests [59].

Quality Assessment

Multimedia Appendix 6 describes the quality of the included studies as assessed on the Downs and Black checklist.

Due to the nature of the intervention, no study blinded participants to treatment and only 3 blinded those assessing all outcome measures [27,60,64]. Additionally, none attempted to demonstrate that their participants were representative of the population or that their participants were recruited randomly. Only 4 studies reported concealing patient allocation until the experiment was complete [31,32,60,64]. Only 6 studies reported adequate statistical power [31,32,60,61,64,66], though 1 study did perform a power calculation but was underpowered because of dropouts [62].

Meta-Analysis

A meta-analysis comparing AVGs with traditional exercise was only able to be conducted for 4 outcome measures: mean HR during exercise, S_pO_2 during exercise, dyspnea induced by the exercise, and enjoyment of the exercise.

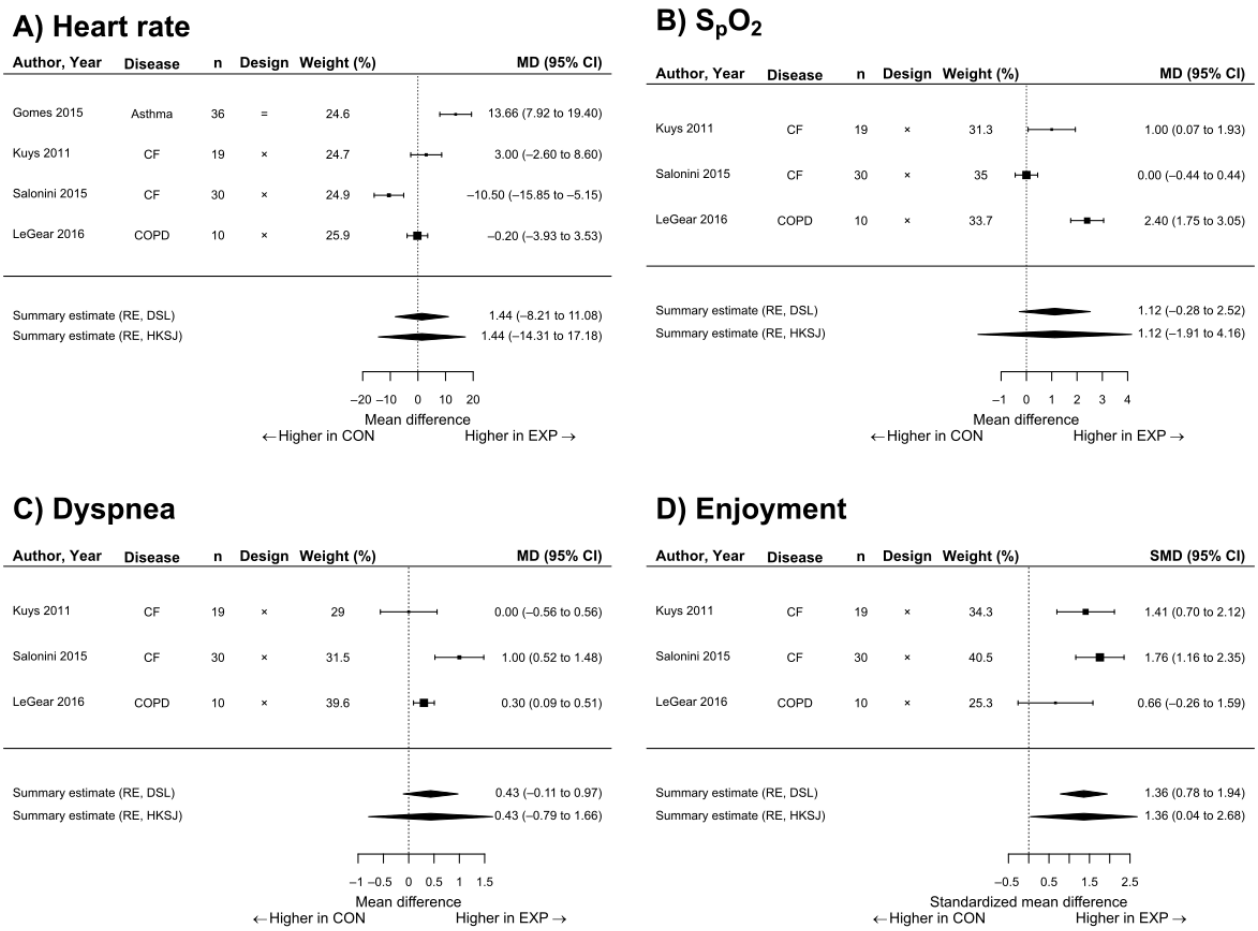
Mean Heart Rate

The mean HR of AVGs and traditional exercise was assessed in 4 studies with a total of 95 participants. As shown in Figure 2, the mean difference between mean HR during AVGs and mean HR during traditional exercise was 1.44 (95% CI –14.31 to 17.18) bpm, indicating there was no significant difference between the 2 interventions. Statistical heterogeneity by I^2 was found to be 93% (95% CI 79%-99%).

The lower and upper bounds of the 90% CI for the difference in HR between interventions are –10.21 bpm and 13.08 bpm, respectively, which are not within the equivalence margins of –10 bpm and 10 bpm. Therefore, these treatments cannot be considered equivalent at α=.05 level.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Figure 2. Forest plots showing comparisons among multiple outcomes reported during exercise in the experimental active video game conditions or the traditional exercise control conditions. MD: mean difference; CF: cystic fibrosis; COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; RE: random effects; DSL: DerSimonian-Laird; HKSJ: Hartung-Knapp-Sidik-Jonkman; EXP: experimental; CON: control; S_pO_2: peripheral blood oxygen saturation.



Mean Peripheral Blood Oxygen Saturation

The mean S_pO_2 of AVGs and traditional exercise was assessed in 3 studies with a total of 59 participants. As shown in Figure 2, the mean difference between mean S_pO_2 during AVGs and mean S_pO_2 during traditional exercise was 1.12 (95% CI –1.91 to 4.16) raw percentage points, indicating there was no significant difference between the 2 interventions. Statistical heterogeneity by I^2 was found to be 93% (95% CI 74%-100%).

The lower and upper bounds of the 90% CI for the difference in mean S_pO_2 between interventions are –0.94% and 3.18%, respectively, which are not within the equivalence margins of –2% and 2%. Therefore, these treatments cannot be considered equivalent at α=.05 level.

Dyspnea

The mean dyspnea of AVGs and traditional exercise was assessed in 3 studies with a total of 59 participants. As shown in Figure 2, the mean difference between mean reported dyspnea during AVGs and during traditional exercise was 0.43 (95% CI –0.79 to 1.66) points on the modified 11-point (0-10) Borg scale, indicating there was no significant difference between the 2 interventions. Statistical heterogeneity by I^2 was found to be 81% (95% CI 18%-100%).

The lower and upper bounds of the 90% CI for the difference in reported dyspnea between interventions are –0.4 and 1.27 points on the modified 11-point (0-10) Borg scale, respectively, which are not within the equivalence margins of –1 and +1 points. Therefore, these treatments cannot be considered equivalent at α=.05 level.

Enjoyment

Measures of enjoyment of AVGs and traditional exercise were reported in 3 studies with a total of 59 participants. As shown in Figure 2, the standardized mean difference between mean reported enjoyment during AVGs and during traditional exercise was 1.36 (95% CI 0.04-2.68), using Hedges *g*, indicating there was a significant difference between the 2 interventions. Statistical heterogeneity by I^2 was found to be 47% (95% CI 0%-99%).

In the absence of other information, Cohen proposed that standardized effect sizes (such as Cohen *d* or Hedges *g*) of greater than or equal to 0.8 be considered as large effects [67]. The effect of enjoyment of AVGs observed in this meta-analysis would therefore be considered a large effect.

Sensitivity Analysis

A sensitivity analysis was conducted by altering the correlation coefficients of crossover studies where the correlation could

XSL•FO
RenderX

not be calculated, which had been assumed to be equal to the correlation calculated in another similar study. This assumption had negligible influence on the outcome measures of HR and enjoyment and little influence on the results of dyspnea (see Multimedia Appendix 7 for full analysis).

Narrative Synthesis

Active Video Games Versus Exercise Test Protocols

Results from 2 studies examining the physiological responses to a single session of active video gaming compared with maximal exercise tests (eg, cardiopulmonary exercise testing and incremental shuttle walk test) suggest that video games usually provide a less intense exercise stimulus than a maximal exercise text. Holmes et al [61] compared the intensity of exercise elicited from the Microsoft Xbox Kinect with the maximal exercise capacity of participants with CF and found the average HR achieved during the 10-min video game session was 86% (95% CI 81-92) of the peak HR achieved during a cardiopulmonary exercise test (using a modified Godfrey Cycle Ergometer Protocol). From this, they conclude the game represented an exercise intensity of 6.1 (SD 1.8) metabolic equivalents (METS), just above the 6METS threshold for vigorous intensity activity in healthy adults [68]. They also found the game produced lower reported dyspnea, lower rating of perceived exertion, and caused less oxygen desaturation than the maximal exercise test.

Another study compared AVGs with a submaximal exercise test, such as a 6-min walk test (6MWT). Del Corral et al (2014) [59] performed a randomized cross-over observational trial to compare the physiological responses with 5 min of 3 different AVGs using the Nintendo Wii console and a 6MWT (repeated twice). They found the 2 games that were focused on aerobic exercise (*EA Sports Active* and *Family Trainer Extreme Challenge*) both elicited a higher volume of oxygen consumption (VO_2) than the 6MWT. However, the game that included balance exercises in addition to aerobic exercises (*Wii FitPlus*) elicited a lower VO_2 during the final 3 min of exercise than the 6MWT. HR was also lower in the *Wii FitPlus* game than the 6MWT but did not differ among the 6MWT and the other 2 games, and there was no statistically significant difference in dyspnea among any intervention.

Active Video Games Versus Rest Only

One study compared physiological responses with AVGs to rest without comparison with a control exercise. The average response to several Nintendo Wii gaming sessions in subjects with COPD was presented by Wardini et al, showing that games significantly increased HR (by a mean of 13.8 bpm) and dyspnea and decreased S_pO_2 compared with rest.

Long-Term Physiological Effects of Active Video Games

In total, 7 studies included more than 1 session of an AVG intervention. When compared with those seen in a control intervention, game interventions were associated with either similar or slightly greater improvements in measured outcomes. For example, in a randomized controlled trial with parallel groups, Gomes et al [64] reported both Microsoft Xbox Kinect and treadmill training for 8 weeks improved aerobic capacity and asthma control, but only the game intervention showed a statistically significant improvement in exhaled fraction of nitric oxide. Similarly, Bingham et al [27] reported forced expiratory volume in 1 second was better maintained during the game intervention than the control intervention. Mazzoleni et al [66] reported both 6MWT distance and dyspnea improved more in the participants performing pulmonary rehabilitation with an adjunct AVG than pulmonary rehabilitation alone.

AVG interventions generally demonstrated improvements over baseline or nonintervention comparators. In a randomized 6-week trial, del Corral et al [60] reported the Nintendo Wii group, but not the control group receiving no intervention, improved both modified shuttle walk test and 6MWT distances, as well as several measures of strength. Similarly, in a single-arm study, Albores et al (2013) [62] reported a statistically significant improvement in endurance shuttle walk test, number of sit-to-stands in 30 seconds and number of arm lifts in 30 seconds after 12 weeks of unsupervised Nintendo Wii training in subjects with COPD. In another single-arm study, Hoffman et al (2013) [65] reported an increase in functional performance, as measured by the number of steps per day, during the game intervention period. No studies reported AVGs were inferior to control or were associated with a negative change to an outcome measure relative to baseline. Wardini et al [63] performed a 3- to 4-week intervention but did not report changes in outcome measures over time.

Adherence and Patient Preference

A total of 5 studies examined adherence to unsupervised AVG treatments and generally reported adherence was higher than 70% and maintained throughout the intervention period [27,60,62,63,65]. The controlled trial by del Corral [60] reported the adherence to the home intervention was 95% during the 6-week trial, but adherence dropped in the 12-month follow-up with 65% no longer using the AVG at all. A single-arm study by Hoffman et al (2013) [65] reported a rate of adherence of 96.6% (SD 3.4%) to a Nintendo Wii intervention in subjects who had undergone surgery for suspected lung cancer. Moreover, the mean time spent performing a walking exercise with the Wii increased during the first 6 weeks' postsurgical recovery period and was maintained for the following 10 weeks [69]. In their uncontrolled (single-arm) study, Albores et al (2013) [62] instructed subjects with COPD to use a Nintendo Wii for exercise for at least 30 minutes on most days of the week. Subjects self-reported exercising at the prescribed frequency and duration throughout the 12-week intervention, with a frequency of 5.7 (SD 1.0) days per week and a weekly total of 3.0 (SD 0.9) hours. Bingham et al [27] did not prescribe the use of their intervention; therefore, adherence could not be calculated. Nonetheless, their game intervention was used for significantly more minutes per day than the control (4.8 [SD 4.4] vs 1.6 [SD 1.8]), with no difference in the number of days each intervention was used. In contrast, in a study by Wardini et al [63], the attendance rate to the game intervention (64% [SD 35%]) was lower than the attendance rate for the pulmonary rehabilitation program (88% [SD 13%]), though the game was delivered as an adjunct rather than an alternative program and no statistical comparison was performed.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Measures of patient preferences, likeability, or perceived feasibility were measured in several studies (in addition to enjoyment, which was summarized in the meta-analysis), showing that games were generally considered likeable and feasible interventions [31,33,63,66]. For example, Kuys et al [31] reported that both the Nintendo Wii intervention and the treadmill or bicycle control exercise were rated highly effective and feasible without significant differences between the 2 interventions. Similarly, LeGear et al [33] reported similar responses between game exercise and treadmill exercise for perceived safety and whether the participants could see themselves performing that exercise at home. Using a 7-item, 7-level Likert-type scale, Mazzoleni et al [66] reported no significant difference between the acceptability of pulmonary rehabilitation alone (43.9 [SD 3.0])) and with active video gaming as an adjunct (42.4 [SD 3.5]). Wardini et al [63] reported the overall enjoyment of the adjunct game intervention to be 8.0 cm (SD 2.6 cm) on a 10-cm visual analog scale. Moreover, participants gave a mean score of 8.0 (SD 2.6 cm when asked if they would recommend the adjunct program to another patient with COPD and a rating of 7.0 cm (SD 3.7cm) when asked if they would consider purchasing a game system of their own.

Adverse Events

No studies reported the occurrence of adverse events linked to AVGs. Wardini et al [63] reported 1 patient with COPD and coronary artery disease requiring the use of nitroglycerin and 5 subjects experiencing transient but asymptomatic oxygen desaturation below 85%, but they did not report whether these were a result of the AVG intervention or the control intervention.

Economic Analysis

No studies performed an economic analysis comparing AVGs with alternative forms of exercise or rehabilitation.

Discussion

Summary of Findings

This systematic review aimed to examine the hypotheses that (1) AVGs improve clinical outcomes and are economically feasible and enjoyable and (2) that AVGs produce equivalent clinical outcomes as traditional exercise programs but are more cost-effective, more enjoyable, and have higher adherence. AVGs generally demonstrated improvements in exercise capacity or functional performance over baseline or nonintervention comparators, and they were generally reported to be well liked by participants. There were no differences among AVGs in physiological outcomes when compared with traditional exercises (such as treadmill or stationary cycling) in the laboratory over a single session, but AVGs were enjoyed more by participants. Despite a few long-term trials, the limited evidence suggests AVGs may provide similar or greater effects on clinical outcome measures compared with traditional forms of exercise. None of the included studies provided any evidence for the economic feasibility of the interventions.

The results of this review corroborate the findings of a systematic review into the effects of AVGs on people with CF [38], which found that the HR response to active video gaming was similar to the traditional methods of physical training. One of the studies included in that review was excluded from this review as it did not compare AVGs with traditional exercise or with rest [70]. This study found that the HR target for moderate physical activity (64% of predicted maximum HR) was met during the boxing activity of the Nintendo Wii game *Wii Sports* and exceeded by the free jogging activity in the Nintendo Wii game *Wii Fit* in children with CF.

Similarly, the results of this review are consistent with a meta-analysis of AVGs for healthy adults and children by Peng et al [71], who concluded that the HR, energy expenditure, and oxygen consumption were no different between AVGs and traditional physical activities. In contrast, a more recent meta-analysis on AVGs in healthy children [72] found that AVGs had a large positive mean effect on HR, small positive mean effect size on enjoyment, and a similar rate of perceived exertion compared with traditional exercise in a laboratory setting.

Physiological Responses to Active Video Games

The results of the meta-analysis indicate that the physiological response to AVGs was not significantly different from traditional exercises (Figure 2). However, statistical equivalence was not demonstrated for any of these physiological outcomes, possibly because of there being so few included studies and the heterogeneity among studies.

The physiological response to AVGs may partly derive from psychological arousal rather than the physical workload of the activity. An increase in the HR and respiratory rate has been observed in healthy adults and children playing inactive video games with traditional controllers [73,74]. Similarly, Sherman et al [75] found that the HR changes were similar whether the game was controlled with a joystick or a motion sensor detecting the movement of the player's body. However, the HR changes reported in the studies included in this review are greater than those seen in response to inactive video games. Additionally, the pooled effect of AVGs on HR and dyspnea was no different from traditional moderate-intensity exercise; therefore, psychological arousal likely had only a small or negligible contribution to the observed physiological responses.

Furthermore, in each study included in the meta-analysis, the participants were instructed to perform both AVGs and traditional exercises at similar self-perceived intensities and supervised to ensure compliance. For example, in both Kuys et al [31] and Salonini et al [32], the participants in each intervention were instructed to exercise at an intensity corresponding to 3 to 5 on the modified Borg scale. Therefore, it is not known whether these interventions would produce similar workloads in a situation where subjects were unsupervised or allowed to exercise at a self-selected intensity.

Additionally, 1 included study [32] did not use the 11-point (0-10) modified Borg scale used by other included studies but rather a visual analog scale that was also 0 to 10, though the results were nonetheless pooled as if they are equivalent scales. Dyspnea assessed on a visual analog scale correlates strongly with the modified Borg scale [76,77], but the correlation between these 2 assessment scales is not perfect, and it therefore may have been a source of additional variability. Furthermore,

XSL•FO
RenderX

Salonini et al [32] assessed dyspnea during exercise, whereas other studies [31,33] assessed dyspnea at the end of the exercise bout. Both of these differences in assessment among studies may have further contributed to the heterogeneity observed in the meta-analysis.

Additionally, the meta-analysis pooled values for mean S_pO_2 as this was the most commonly reported measure, but minimum S_pO_2 may be more relevant to detecting the occurrence of exertional oxygen desaturation that can occur in CF [51,52] and COPD [53,78]. Only 2 papers reported minimum S_pO_2. Kuys et al [31] found that minimum S_pO_2 was 2% lower in traditional exercise compared with game-based exercise, but this was not a significant difference (95% CI –2 to 6). LeGear et al [33] reported that minimum S_pO_2 was 91.3% during the game versus 88.7% in the treadmill, but they did not perform a statistical comparison between these interventions (nor report sufficient data to enable one to be calculated).

Other Responses to Active Video Games

The pooled estimate of enjoyment of AVGs was significantly higher than traditional exercises; however, this estimate was based upon a small number of studies with heterogeneous outcome measures. Each included study assessed enjoyment using different measures and none used an experimentally validated measure of enjoyment, which limits comparison among included studies and with the literature as a whole. Established, validated instruments for assessing enjoyment of exercise include the Physical Activity Enjoyment Scale [79] or Feeling Scale [80]. In healthy sedentary adults, an increase of 1 unit on the 11-point bipolar (–5 to +5) Feeling Scale during moderate-intensity treadmill walking is associated with an increase of 15 minutes of weekly physical activity at 6-month follow-up [81], though this result was observational, and causation therefore could not been demonstrated. Nonetheless, it is possible that the 2-unit difference on the 0 to 10 cm visual analog scale in response to AVGs compared with traditional exercise reported by Kuys et al [31], which corresponds with the pooled estimate of the meta-analysis of this study (as shown in Figure 2), could result in at least a similar increase in physical activity in subjects with respiratory diseases.

The included studies assessed enjoyment of exercise by assessing participants after exercise rather than during. Enjoyment assessed after exercise may be biased because of either the time between exercise and giving an enjoyment response or to an emotional response to completion of the task.

Some studies used a continuous mode of exercise as a control (continuous cycling or treadmill walking), whereas participants playing AVGs performed periods of exercise interspersed with rest periods between game levels [32,33]. Interval training has been demonstrated to be more enjoyable than continuous exercise in healthy active populations [82,83], which may explain at least part of the enjoyment effect of AVGs over traditional exercise in the included studies. Additionally, the video game intervention often involved different exercises and a greater variety of exercises compared with the control [31,33]. Thus, it is possible that a control intervention, which also comprised a variety of exercises (eg, dancing, boxing, and running) may have been just as enjoyable as the AVG. In future, studies should compare AVGs with interval training comprising a routine or circuit with an equivalent variety of exercises.

Additionally, several included studies noted that the greater enjoyment found in AVGs may be because participants found them more novel than traditional exercises. Studies of longer duration must be performed to see if enjoyment is maintained in subjects with respiratory diseases using AVGs as part of their rehabilitation and if this corresponds to a greater adherence to exercise. Most studies used supervised exercise training and therefore could not assess the effect of video games on adherence to unsupervised home exercise or self-chosen duration of exercise. The greater enjoyment seen in video games could fail to translate to greater adherence or longer durations of exercise, perhaps because the additional technological requirements of AVGs compared with other modes of exercise (such as jogging) may decrease adherence in a real-world situation.

No adverse events linked to the AVG intervention were reported in any included studies, though the small sample sizes of included studies may have limited their ability to detect rare adverse events.

Strengths and Limitations

This review includes evidence from multiple respiratory conditions, which provides a broader picture using a greater quantity of evidence than is currently available for any condition individually. Additionally, despite the different methodologies and reported outcome measures, this review transformed and standardized the data as best as possible to enable a meta-analysis to be conducted, using the conservative HKSJ approach [44,45].

The main limitation of this review is the small number and significant heterogeneity of the included studies. This review mostly included relatively small studies that examined multiple different respiratory diseases, within different age groups and using different interventions (eg, types of software and technology). A subgroup analysis was not performed for age groups or disease populations as the evidence was limited to just 1 or 2 studies in each group. This clinical heterogeneity was the reason for performing a narrative synthesis for several outcomes. The statistical heterogeneity was also high; however, because of the low number of studies, even the estimates of statistical heterogeneity were highly uncertain.

An additional limitation is the inclusion of only studies published in full, which ensured data came only from high-quality studies but may have caused the review to be vulnerable to publication bias, which also may have limited previous reviews [26]. Language bias may also have been present as all search terms were in English, although indexed terms were used, which may have minimized potential language bias. Finally, the HKSJ estimation method, though chosen because it provides a more conservative estimate than more common approaches, may overestimate uncertainty with so few included studies [46].

XSL•FO
RenderX

Conclusions

The results of this systematic review and meta-analysis indicate that in a single session, AVGs, when used for cardiovascular exercise, can evoke similar exercise intensities to those produced by traditional exercise modalities but are considered more enjoyable by subjects with respiratory diseases. However, little evidence exists from unsupervised long-term trials of AVGs used for any rehabilitative purpose in respiratory conditions, though some limited evidence from supervised longer-term trials indicates that AVGs may be equal or slightly superior to traditional exercise training in some outcome measures.

Future research is needed regarding the long-term effects of AVGs, the use of AVGs for other rehabilitative purposes such as strength training or airway clearance techniques, and the economic benefits of utilizing AVGs rather than traditional supervised or unsupervised rehabilitation programs. Additionally, future work could explore the differences between technologies (game consoles) and software (individual games) to enable the creation of more effective gaming interventions for use in rehabilitation. Finally, when assessing the enjoyment of game interventions, validated outcome measures should be used to facilitate comparison to established research on enjoyment of exercise interventions.

Acknowledgments

The authors thank Dr Michael David (University of Queensland, Brisbane, Australia) for his advice regarding the statistical methods used in this meta-analysis.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Search terms used for each database.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 34KB - games_v7i1e10116_app1.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 2

Compressed archive containing source files (in RMarkdown format), plus necessary associated formatting templates and citation files, to generate the submitted manuscript. Requires raw data files (see other appendices).

[ZIP File (Zip Archive), 749KB - games_v7i1e10116_app2.zip]

Multimedia Appendix 3

Raw data for results of database searches and screening process.

[ZIP File (Zip Archive), 342KB - games_v7i1e10116_app3.zip]

Multimedia Appendix 4

Raw data extracted from included studies, for characteristics of included studies and outcome variables for meta-analysis.

[ZIP File (Zip Archive), 2KB - games_v7i1e10116_app4.zip]

Multimedia Appendix 5

Characteristics of included studies.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 44KB - games_v7i1e10116_app5.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 6

Study quality assessed using Downs and Black (1998) checklist.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 666KB - games_v7i1e10116_app6.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 7

Sensitivity analysis for meta-analysis.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 23KB - games_v7i1e10116_app7.pdf]

XSL•FO
RenderX

References

1. Bateman ED, Hurd SS, Barnes PJ, Bousquet J, Drazen JM, FitzGerald M, et al. Global strategy for asthma management and prevention: GINA executive summary. Eur Respir J 2008 Jan;31(1):143-178 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1183/09031936.00138707] [Medline: 18166595]
2. Rabe KF, Hurd S, Anzueto A, Barnes PJ, Buist SA, Calverley P, Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease. Global strategy for the diagnosis, management, and prevention of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: GOLD executive summary. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2007 Sep 15;176(6):532-555. [doi: 10.1164/rccm.200703-456SO] [Medline: 17507545]
3. Cutting GR. Cystic fibrosis genetics: from molecular understanding to clinical application. Nat Rev Genet 2015 Jan;16(1):45-56 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1038/nrg3849] [Medline: 25404111]
4. Maio S, Baldacci S, Carrozzi L, Pistelli F, Viegi G. The global burden of chronic respiratory diseases. Breathe 2006 Sep;3(1):20-29. [doi: 10.1183/18106838.0301.20]
5. Carson KV, Chandratilleke MG, Picot J, Brinn MP, Esterman AJ, Smith BJ. Physical training for asthma. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2013 Sep 30(9):CD001116. [doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD001116.pub4] [Medline: 24085631]
6. Radtke T, Nolan SJ, Hebestreit H, Kriemler S. Physical exercise training for cystic fibrosis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2015 Jun 28(6):CD002768. [doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD002768.pub3] [Medline: 26116828]
7. Gimeno-Santos E, Frei A, Steurer-Stey C, De Batlle J, Rabinovich RA, Raste Y, PROactive consortium. Determinants and outcomes of physical activity in patients with COPD: a systematic review. Thorax 2014 Aug;69(8):731-739 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1136/thoraxjnl-2013-204763] [Medline: 24558112]
8. McCarthy B, Casey D, Devane D, Murphy K, Murphy E, Lacasse Y. Pulmonary rehabilitation for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2015 Feb 23(2):CD003793. [doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD003793.pub3] [Medline: 25705944]
9. Holland AE, Wadell K, Spruit MA. How to adapt the pulmonary rehabilitation programme to patients with chronic respiratory disease other than COPD. Eur Respir Rev 2013 Dec;22(130):577-586 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1183/09059180.00005613] [Medline: 24293474]
10. Rochester CL, Fairburn C, Crouch RH. Pulmonary rehabilitation for respiratory disorders other than chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Clin Chest Med 2014 Jun;35(2):369-389. [doi: 10.1016/j.ccm.2014.02.016] [Medline: 24874132]
11. Button BM, Wilson C, Dentice R, Cox NS, Middleton A, Tannenbaum E, et al. Physiotherapy for cystic fibrosis in Australia and New Zealand: a clinical practice guideline. Respirology 2016 May;21(4):656-667 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1111/resp.12764] [Medline: 27086904]
12. Qaseem A, Wilt TJ, Weinberger SE, Hanania NA, Criner G, van der Molen T, American College of Physicians, American College of Chest Physicians, American Thoracic Society, European Respiratory Society. Diagnosis and management of stable chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a clinical practice guideline update from the American College of Physicians, American College of Chest Physicians, American Thoracic Society, and European Respiratory Society. Ann Intern Med 2011 Aug 2;155(3):179-191. [doi: 10.7326/0003-4819-155-3-201108020-00008] [Medline: 21810710]
13. Caspersen CJ, Powell KE, Christenson GM. Physical activity, exercise, and physical fitness: definitions and distinctions for health-related research. Public Health Rep 1985 Apr;100(2):126-131 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 3920711]
14. Cox NS, Alison JA, Button BM, Wilson JW, Morton JM, Holland AE. Physical activity participation by adults with cystic fibrosis: an observational study. Respirology 2016 Apr;21(3):511-518 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1111/resp.12719] [Medline: 26715596]
15. Hayton C, Clark A, Olive S, Browne P, Galey P, Knights E, et al. Barriers to pulmonary rehabilitation: characteristics that predict patient attendance and adherence. Respir Med 2013 Mar;107(3):401-407 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/j.rmed.2012.11.016] [Medline: 23261311]
16. Hogg L, Garrod R, Thornton H, McDonnell L, Bellas H, White P. Effectiveness, attendance, and completion of an integrated, system-wide pulmonary rehabilitation service for COPD: prospective observational study. COPD 2012 Aug;9(5):546-554. [doi: 10.3109/15412555.2012.707258] [Medline: 23030586]
17. Saunders T, Campbell N, Jason T, Dechman G, Hernandez P, Thompson K, et al. Objectively measured steps/day in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Phys Act Health 2016 Dec;13(11):1275-1283. [doi: 10.1123/jpah.2016-0087] [Medline: 27334811]
18. Mancuso CA, Sayles W, Robbins L, Phillips EG, Ravenell K, Duffy C, et al. Barriers and facilitators to healthy physical activity in asthma patients. J Asthma 2006 Mar;43(2):137-143. [doi: 10.1080/02770900500498584] [Medline: 16517430]
19. O'Shea SD, Taylor NF, Paratz JD. . . . But watch out for the weather: factors affecting adherence to progressive resistance exercise for persons with COPD. J Cardiopulm Rehabil Prev 2007;27(3):166-174. [doi: 10.1097/01.HCR.0000270686.78763.c8] [Medline: 17558200]
20. Swisher AK, Erickson M. Perceptions of physical activity in a group of adolescents with cystic fibrosis. Cardiopulm Phys Ther J 2008 Dec;19(4):107-113 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 20467507]
21. Arnold E, Bruton A, Ellis-Hill C. Adherence to pulmonary rehabilitation: a qualitative study. Respir Med 2006 Oct;100(10):1716-1723 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/j.rmed.2006.02.007] [Medline: 16554147]

XSL•FO
RenderX

22. Hartman JE, ten Hacken NH, Boezen HM, de Greef MH. Self-efficacy for physical activity and insight into its benefits are modifiable factors associated with physical activity in people with COPD: a mixed-methods study. J Physiother 2013 Jun;59(2):117-124 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/S1836-9553(13)70164-4] [Medline: 23663797]
23. Ferguson MB, Baranowski PT, Bingham P, Lieberman D, Medina Jr E, Schell J, et al. Health games come of age: an expert panel discussion. Games Health J 2012 Feb;1(1):11-17. [doi: 10.1089/g4h.2012.1014] [Medline: 26196427]
24. Oh Y, Yang S. Defining exergames and exergaming. 2010 Jan Presented at: Meaningful Play; 2010; East Lansing, MI, USA.
25. Pope Z, Zeng N, Gao Z. The effects of active video games on patients' rehabilitative outcomes: a meta-analysis. Prev Med 2017 Feb;95:38-46. [doi: 10.1016/j.ypmed.2016.12.003] [Medline: 27939260]
26. Staiano AE, Flynn R. Therapeutic uses of active video games: a systematic review. Games Health J 2014 Dec;3(6):351-365 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1089/g4h.2013.0100] [Medline: 26192642]
27. Bingham PM, Lahiri T, Ashikaga T. Pilot trial of spirometer games for airway clearance practice in cystic fibrosis. Respir Care 2012 Aug;57(8):1278-1284 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.4187/respcare.01263] [Medline: 22348602]
28. Oikonomou A, Hartescu D, Day D, Ma M. Computer games physiotherapy for children with cystic fibrosis. In: Ma M, Jain L, Anderson P, editors. Virtual, Augmented Reality and Serious Games for Healthcare 1. Berlin, Heidelberg: Springer; 2014:411-443.
29. Vilozni D, Barak A, Efrati O, Augarten A, Springer C, Yahav Y, et al. The role of computer games in measuring spirometry in healthy and "asthmatic" preschool children. Chest 2005 Sep;128(3):1146-1155. [doi: 10.1378/chest.128.3.1146] [Medline: 16162700]
30. Lange B, Flynn SM, Rizzo AA. Game-based telerehabilitation. Eur J Phys Rehabil Med 2009 Mar;45(1):143-151 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 19282807]
31. Kuys SS, Hall K, Peasey M, Wood M, Cobb R, Bell SC. Gaming console exercise and cycle or treadmill exercise provide similar cardiovascular demand in adults with cystic fibrosis: a randomised cross-over trial. J Physiother 2011;57(1):35-40 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/S1836-9553(11)70005-4] [Medline: 21402328]
32. Salonini E, Gambazza S, Meneghelli I, Tridello G, Sanguanini M, Cazzarolli C, et al. Active video game playing in children and adolescents with cystic fibrosis: Exercise or just fun? Respir Care 2015 Aug;60(8):1172-1179 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.4187/respcare.03576] [Medline: 25899477]
33. LeGear T, LeGear M, Preradovic D, Wilson G, Kirkham A, Camp PG. Does a Nintendo Wii exercise program provide similar exercise demands as a traditional pulmonary rehabilitation program in adults with COPD? Clin Respir J 2016 May;10(3):303-310. [doi: 10.1111/crj.12216] [Medline: 25351282]
34. Rhodes RE, Fiala B, Conner M. A review and meta-analysis of affective judgments and physical activity in adult populations. Ann Behav Med 2009 Dec;38(3):180-204. [doi: 10.1007/s12160-009-9147-y] [Medline: 20082164]
35. Rhodes RE, Kates A. A. Can the affective response to exercise predict future motives and physical activity behavior? A systematic review of published evidence. Ann Behav Med 2015 Oct;49(5):715-731. [doi: 10.1007/s12160-015-9704-5] [Medline: 25921307]
36. Rhodes RE, Warburton DE, Bredin SS. Predicting the effect of interactive video bikes on exercise adherence: an efficacy trial. Psychol Health Med 2009 Dec;14(6):631-640. [doi: 10.1080/13548500903281088] [Medline: 20183536]
37. Lyons EJ, Tate DF, Ward DS, Ribisl KM, Bowling JM, Kalyanaraman S. Engagement, enjoyment, and energy expenditure during active video game play. Health Psychol 2014 Feb;33(2):174-181 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1037/a0031947] [Medline: 23527520]
38. Carbonera R, Vendrusculo F, Donadio M. Physiological responses during exercise with video games in patients with cystic fibrosis: a systematic review. Resp Med 2016 Oct;119:63-69. [doi: 10.1016/j.rmed.2016.08.011] [Medline: 27692149]
39. Bonnechère B, Jansen B, Omelina L, Van Sint Jan S. The use of commercial video games in rehabilitation: a systematic review. Int J Rehabil Res 2016 Dec;39(4):277-290. [doi: 10.1097/MRR.0000000000000190] [Medline: 27508968]
40. Costa TH, Soares NM, Reis WA, Bublitz FM. A systematic review on the usage of games for healthcare. 2015 Presented at: IEEE 5th International Conference on Consumer Electronics-Berlin (ICCE-Berlin); September 6-9, 2015; Berlin, Germany. [doi: 10.1109/ICCE-Berlin.2015.7391316]
41. Ravenek KE, Wolfe DL, Hitzig SL. A scoping review of video gaming in rehabilitation. Disabil Rehabil Assist Technol 2015 Aug;11(6):445-453. [doi: 10.3109/17483107.2015.1029538] [Medline: 25815680]
42. Cochrane Airways. 2013. Search methods for the Cochrane Airways Group Specialised Register URL: http://airways.cochrane.org/sites/airways.cochrane.org/files/public/uploads/Search%20strategies%20document_2013_0.pdf [accessed 2016-11-15] [WebCite Cache ID 6x2oOAIp4]
43. Downs SH, Black N. The feasibility of creating a checklist for the assessment of the methodological quality both of randomised and non-randomised studies of health care interventions. J Epidemiol Community Health 1998 Jun;52(6):377-384 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 9764259]
44. Hartung J, Knapp G. On tests of the overall treatment effect in meta-analysis with normally distributed responses. Stat Med 2001 Jun 30;20(12):1771-1782. [doi: 10.1002/sim.791] [Medline: 11406840]
45. Sidik K, Jonkman JN. A simple confidence interval for meta-analysis. Stat Med 2002 Nov 15;21(21):3153-3159. [doi: 10.1002/sim.1262] [Medline: 12375296]

XSL•FO
RenderX

46. Cornell JE, Mulrow CD, Localio R, Stack CB, Meibohm AR, Guallar E, et al. Random-effects meta-analysis of inconsistent effects: a time for change. Ann Intern Med 2014 Feb 18;160(4):267-270. [doi: 10.7326/M13-2886] [Medline: 24727843]
47. IntHout J, Ioannidis JP, Borm GF. The Hartung-Knapp-Sidik-Jonkman method for random effects meta-analysis is straightforward and considerably outperforms the standard DerSimonian-Laird method. BMC Med Res Methodol 2014 Feb 18;14:25 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1186/1471-2288-14-25] [Medline: 24548571]
48. Hedges LV. Distribution theory for Glass's estimator of effect size and related estimators. J Educ Stat 1981;6(2):107-128. [doi: 10.3102/10769986006002107]
49. Walker E, Nowacki AS. Understanding equivalence and noninferiority testing. J Gen Intern Med 2011 Feb;26(2):192-196 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1007/s11606-010-1513-8] [Medline: 20857339]
50. Ries AL. Minimally clinically important difference for the UCSD Shortness of Breath Questionnaire, Borg Scale, and Visual Analog Scale. COPD 2005 Mar;2(1):105-110. [Medline: 17136970]
51. Holland AE, Rasekaba T, Wilson JW, Button BM. Desaturation during the 3-minute step test predicts impaired 12-month outcomes in adult patients with cystic fibrosis. Respir Care 2011 Aug;56(8):1137-1142 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.4187/respcare.01016] [Medline: 21496365]
52. Ruf K, Hebestreit H. Exercise-induced hypoxemia and cardiac arrhythmia in cystic fibrosis. J Cyst Fibros 2009 Mar;8(2):83-90 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/j.jcf.2008.09.008] [Medline: 19027369]
53. Casanova C, Cote C, Marin JM, Pinto-Plata V, de Torres JP, Aguirre-Jaíme A, et al. Distance and oxygen desaturation during the 6-min walk test as predictors of long-term mortality in patients with COPD. Chest 2008 Oct;134(4):746-752. [doi: 10.1378/chest.08-0520] [Medline: 18625667]
54. Elbourne DR, Altman DG, Higgins JP, Curtin F, Worthington HV, Vail A. Meta-analyses involving cross-over trials: methodological issues. Int J Epidemiol 2002 Feb;31(1):140-149. [Medline: 11914310]
55. Wan X, Wang W, Liu J, Tong T. Estimating the sample mean and standard deviation from the sample size, median, range and/or interquartile range. BMC Med Res Methodol 2014 Dec 19;14:135 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1186/1471-2288-14-135] [Medline: 25524443]
56. Viechtbauer W. Conducting Meta-Analyses in with the Package. J Stat Soft 2010 Aug 5;36(3) [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.18637/jss.v036.i03]
57. Baumer B, Cetinkaya-Rundel M, Bray A, Loi L, Horton NJ. arXiv. 2014 Feb 8. R markdown: Integrating a reproducible analysis tool into introductory statistics URL: https://arxiv.org/pdf/1402.1894 [accessed 2019-01-15] [WebCite Cache ID 75SXyWzIX]
58. Moher D, Liberati A, Tetzlaff J, Altman DG, PRISMA Group. Preferred reporting items for systematic reviews and meta-analyses: the PRISMA statement. PLoS Med 2009 Jul 21;6(7):e1000097 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1000097] [Medline: 19621072]
59. del Corral T, Percegona J, Seborga M, Rabinovich RA, Vilaró J. Physiological response during activity programs using Wii-based video games in patients with cystic fibrosis (CF). J Cyst Fibros 2014 Dec;13(6):706-711 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/j.jcf.2014.05.004] [Medline: 24935613]
60. del Corral T, Cebrià i Iranzo MA, López-de-Uralde-Villanueva I, Martínez-Alejos R, Blanco I, Vilaró J. Effectiveness of a home-based active video game programme in young cystic fibrosis patients. Respiration 2018;95(2):87-97. [doi: 10.1159/000481264] [Medline: 29045949]
61. Holmes H, Wood J, Jenkins S, Winship P, Lunt D, Bostock S, et al. Xbox Kinect™ represents high intensity exercise for adults with cystic fibrosis. J Cyst Fibros 2013 Dec;12(6):604-608 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/j.jcf.2013.05.005] [Medline: 23746575]
62. Albores J, Marolda C, Haggerty M, Gerstenhaber B, ZuWallack R. The use of a home exercise program based on a computer system in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. J Cardiopulm Rehabil Prev 2013;33(1):47-52. [doi: 10.1097/HCR.0b013e3182724091] [Medline: 23235321]
63. Wardini R, Dajczman E, Yang N, Baltzan M, Préfontaine D, Stathatos M, et al. Using a virtual game system to innovate pulmonary rehabilitation: safety, adherence and enjoyment in severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Can Respir J 2013;20(5):357-361. [doi: 10.1155/2013/563861] [Medline: 24093115]
64. Gomes EL, Carvalho CR, Peixoto-Souza FS, Teixeira-Carvalho EF, Mendonça JF, Stirbulov R, et al. Active video game exercise training improves the clinical control of asthma in children: randomized controlled trial. PLoS One 2015 Aug 24;10(8):e0135433 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0135433] [Medline: 26301706]
65. Hoffman AJ, Brintnall RA, Brown JK, von Eye A, Jones LW, Alderink G, et al. Too sick not to exercise: using a 6-week, home-based exercise intervention for cancer-related fatigue self-management for postsurgical non-small cell lung cancer patients. Cancer Nurs 2013;36(3):175-188. [doi: 10.1097/NCC.0b013e31826c7763] [Medline: 23051872]
66. Mazzoleni S, Montagnani G, Vagheggini G, Buono L, Moretti F, Dario P, et al. Interactive videogame as rehabilitation tool of patients with chronic respiratory diseases: preliminary results of a feasibility study. Respir Med 2014 Oct;108(10):1516-1524 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/j.rmed.2014.07.004] [Medline: 25087837]
67. Cohen J. Statistical Power Analysis For The Behavioral Sciences (2nd Edition). New York, NY, USA: Routledge; Jul 1, 1988:400.

XSL•FO
RenderX

68. Garber CE, Blissmer B, Deschenes MR, Franklin BA, Lamonte MJ, Lee I, American College of Sports Medicine. American College of Sports Medicine position stand. Quantity and quality of exercise for developing and maintaining cardiorespiratory, musculoskeletal, and neuromotor fitness in apparently healthy adults: guidance for prescribing exercise. Med Sci Sports Exerc 2011 Jul;43(7):1334-1359. [doi: 10.1249/MSS.0b013e318213fefb] [Medline: 21694556]
69. Hoffman AJ, Brintnall RA, Brown JK, von Eye A, Jones LW, Alderink G, et al. Virtual reality bringing a new reality to postthoracotomy lung cancer patients via a home-based exercise intervention targeting fatigue while undergoing adjuvant treatment. Cancer Nurs 2014;37(1):23-33. [doi: 10.1097/NCC.0b013e318278d52f] [Medline: 23348662]
70. O'Donovan C, Greally P, Canny G, McNally P, Hussey J. Active video games as an exercise tool for children with cystic fibrosis. J Cyst Fibros 2014 May;13(3):341-346 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/j.jcf.2013.10.008] [Medline: 24189057]
71. Peng W, Lin JH, Crouse J. Is playing exergames really exercising? A meta-analysis of energy expenditure in active video games. Cyberpsychol Behav Soc Netw 2011 Nov;14(11):681-688. [doi: 10.1089/cyber.2010.0578] [Medline: 21668370]
72. Gao Z, Chen S, Pasco D, Pope Z. A meta-analysis of active video games on health outcomes among children and adolescents. Obes Rev 2015 Sep;16(9):783-794. [doi: 10.1111/obr.12287] [Medline: 25943852]
73. Segal KR, Dietz WH. Physiologic responses to playing a video game. Am J Dis Child 1991 Sep;145(9):1034-1036. [Medline: 1877563]
74. Wang X, Perry AC. Metabolic and physiologic responses to video game play in 7- to 10-year-old boys. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2006 Apr;160(4):411-415. [doi: 10.1001/archpedi.160.4.411] [Medline: 16585487]
75. Sherman JD, Sherman MS, Heiman-Patterson T. Cardiopulmonary response to videogaming: slaying monsters using motion sensor versus joystick devices. Games Health J 2014 Oct;3(5):284-290. [doi: 10.1089/g4h.2014.0049] [Medline: 26192482]
76. Capodaglio EM. Comparison between the CR10 Borg's scale and the VAS (visual analogue scale) during an arm-cranking exercise. J Occup Rehabil 2001 Jun;11(2):69-74. [Medline: 11706532]
77. Wilson RC, Jones PW. A comparison of the visual analogue scale and modified Borg scale for the measurement of dyspnoea during exercise. Clin Sci (Lond) 1989 Mar;76(3):277-282. [Medline: 2924519]
78. Jenkins S, Čečins N. Six-minute walk test: observed adverse events and oxygen desaturation in a large cohort of patients with chronic lung disease. Intern Med J 2011 May;41(5):416-422. [doi: 10.1111/j.1445-5994.2010.02169.x] [Medline: 20059599]
79. Kendzierski D, DeCarlo KJ. Physical activity enjoyment scale: two validation studies. J Sport Exerc Psychol 1991 Mar;13(1):50-64. [doi: 10.1123/jsep.13.1.50]
80. Hardy CJ, Rejeski WJ. Not what, but how one feels: the measurement of affect during exercise. J Sport Exerc Psychol 1989 Sep;11(3):304-317. [doi: 10.1123/jsep.11.3.304]
81. Williams DM, Dunsiger S, Jennings EG, Marcus BH. Does affective valence during and immediately following a 10-min walk predict concurrent and future physical activity? Ann Behav Med 2012 Aug;44(1):43-51 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1007/s12160-012-9362-9] [Medline: 22532005]
82. Thum JS, Parsons G, Whittle T, Astorino TA. High-intensity interval training elicits higher enjoyment than moderate intensity continuous exercise. PLoS One 2017 Jan 11;12(1):e0166299 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0166299] [Medline: 28076352]
83. Bartlett JD, Close GL, MacLaren DP, Gregson W, Drust B, Morton JP. High-intensity interval running is perceived to be more enjoyable than moderate-intensity continuous exercise: implications for exercise adherence. J Sports Sci 2011 Mar;29(6):547-553. [doi: 10.1080/02640414.2010.545427] [Medline: 21360405]

Abbreviations

AVG: active video game
bpm: beats per minute
CF: cystic fibrosis
CINAHL: Cumulative Index to Nursing and Allied Health Literature
COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
DSL: DerSimonian-Laird
HKSJ: Hartung-Knapp-Sidik-Jonkman
HR: heart rate
IEEE: Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
METS: metabolic equivalents
6MWT: 6-min walk test
PRISMA: Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses
S_pO_2: peripheral blood oxygen saturation
VO_2: volume of oxygen consumption

XSL•FO
RenderX

Edited by G Eysenbach; submitted 14.02.18; peer-reviewed by A Staiano, S Vorrink; comments to author 19.04.18; revised version received 11.06.18; accepted 12.07.18; published 25.02.19.

Please cite as:
Simmich J, Deacon AJ, Russell TG
Active Video Games for Rehabilitation in Respiratory Conditions: Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis
JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e10116
URL: http://games.jmir.org/2019/1/e10116/
doi:10.2196/10116
PMID:30801256

©Joshua Simmich, Anthony J Deacon, Trevor G Russell. Originally published in JMIR Serious Games (http://games.jmir.org), 25.02.2019. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR Serious Games, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://games.jmir.org, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Original Paper

Creating a Theoretically Grounded Gaming App to Increase Adherence to Pre-Exposure Prophylaxis: Lessons From the Development of the Viral Combat Mobile Phone Game

Laura Whiteley[1*], MD; Leandro Mena[2*], MD, MPH; Lacey K Craker[3*], MPH; Meredith Garver Healy[3*], BA; Larry K Brown[1,3*], MD

[1]Department of Psychiatry, Warren Alpert Medical School, Brown University, Providence, RI, United States
[2]University of Mississippi Medical Center, University of Mississippi, Jackson, MS, United States
[3]Young Adult Behavioral Health, Department of Psychiatry and Human Behavior, Rhode Island Hospital, Providence, RI, United States
[*]all authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Laura Whiteley, MD
Department of Psychiatry
Warren Alpert Medical School
Brown University
Residency Training Program-Brown University-Butler Hospital
345 Blackstone Boulevard
Providence, RI, 02906
United States
Phone: 1 401 455 6375
Email: laura_whiteley@brown.edu

Abstract

Background: In the United States, young minority men who have sex with men (MSM) are most likely to become infected with HIV. The use of antiretroviral medications to reduce the risk of acquiring HIV infection (pre-exposure prophylaxis, PrEP) is an efficacious and promising prevention strategy. There have been significant advances regarding PrEP, including the definitive demonstration that PrEP reduces HIV acquisition and the development of clinical prescribing guidelines. Despite these promising events, the practical implementation of PrEP can be challenging. Data show that PrEP's safety and effectiveness could be greatly compromised by suboptimal adherence to treatment, and there is concern about the potential for an increase in HIV risk behavior among PrEP users. Due to these challenges, the prescribing of PrEP should be accompanied by behavioral interventions to promote adherence.

Objective: This study aimed to develop an immersive, action-oriented iPhone gaming intervention to improve motivation for adherence to PrEP.

Methods: Game development was guided by social learning theory, taking into consideration the perspectives of young adult MSM who are taking PrEP. A total of 20 young men who have sex with men (YMSM; aged 18-35 years) were recruited from a sexually transmitted infection (STI), HIV testing, and PrEP care clinic in Jackson, Mississippi, between October 2016 and June 2017. They participated in qualitative interviews guided by the information-motivation-behavioral skills (IMB) model of behavior change. The mean age of participants was 26 years, and all the participants identified as male. Acceptability of the game was assessed with the Client Service Questionnaire and session evaluation form.

Results: A number of themes emerged that informed game development. YMSM taking PrEP desired informational game content that included new and comprehensive details about the effectiveness of PrEP, details about PrEP as it relates to doctors' visits, and general information about STIs other than HIV. Motivational themes that emerged were the desire for enhancement of future orientation; reinforcement of positive influences from partners, parents, and friends; collaboration with health care providers; decreasing stigma; and a focus on personal relevance of PrEP-related medical care. Behavioral skills themes centered around self-efficacy and strategies for adherence to PrEP and self-care.

Conclusions: We utilized youth feedback, IMB, and agile software development to create a multilevel, immersive, action-oriented iPhone gaming intervention to improve motivation for adherence to PrEP. There is a dearth of gaming interventions for persons

XSL•FO
RenderX

on PrEP. This study is a significant step in working toward the development and testing of an iPhone gaming intervention to decrease HIV risk and promote adherence to PrEP for YMSM.

(JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e11861) doi:10.2196/11861

KEYWORDS

cell phone; HIV; young adult; sexual and gender minorities

Introduction

Background

The primary prevention of HIV infection remains a crucial priority. In 2016, there were 39,782 new HIV diagnoses in the United States, and 67% of these new diagnoses were of gay and bisexual men [1]. HIV also disproportionately affects communities of color. Despite only comprising 12.6% of the US population, nearly 45% of all new HIV infections occur among African Americans. The use of antiretroviral medications to reduce the risk of acquiring HIV infection (pre-exposure prophylaxis, PrEP) is an efficacious and promising new prevention strategy [1,2]. There have been significant advances regarding PrEP including the definitive demonstration that PrEP reduces HIV acquisition. Despite promising data, the practical implementation of PrEP is challenging [3-10]. Unfortunately, individuals who are often at the highest risk of HIV infection and eligible for PrEP come from populations that historically have been underserved by health care [11,12]. Therefore, engaging diverse persons on PrEP in care is challenging, and reinforcement and support for patients and doctors is required [11,13-15]. Behavioral Interventions promoting adherence to comprehensive PrEP treatment and healthy sexual behaviors will need to be tailored to diverse, underserved, and at-risk populations and will need to reinforce the clinician-patient relationship.

In addition, the behavioral interventions accompanying PrEP need to be scalable, cost-effective, and easily integrated into clinical settings [2,16]. Without these necessary components, integration of behavioral interventions into clinical settings cannot be realistically sustained. Utilizing gaming technology to deliver behavioral interventions for young men who have sex with men (YMSM) can improve intrinsic motivation and information and build behavioral skills for adherence. The use of an intervention that utilizes gaming technology is particularly compelling for use with younger adults, as this age group is at the highest risk of acquiring HIV and this age group has most actively inquired about PrEP in clinical settings. In addition, 72% of young male adults in the United States say they play video games often or sometimes [17]. Gaming technology is also popular among minority men who have sex with men (MSM), the subgroup most at risk for acquiring HIV. In the past, gaming was mistakenly identified as a primarily adolescent and heterosexually dominated activity, but current data support that gaming is actually quite diverse [18]. MSM gamers, referred to as *gaymers* in pop culture and mainstream articles, are highly represented on the web and increasingly shape the market [19-21]. In addition, within the United States, African Americans aged 18 to 35 years represent the most active and fastest growing user group of mobile phones [22,23], and more than half of the reported video gaming occurs on portable devices [18,21,22]. The widespread appeal and use of mobile phones and video game playing creates a unique opportunity to deliver health education to diverse YMSM on PrEP during leisure time, outside of the clinic, and in a manner that is cost-effective and easily scalable [24-27].

Interactive game play has been shown to enhance players' motivation to improve health behaviors and self-care in a variety of clinical settings and populations. Games can attract and maintain attention, a key component for effective behavior change. Compelling interactive phone-based games can expose players to essential health-related content thousands of times and also give players unlimited opportunities to rehearse new skills and receive personalized feedback on health choices made within the game [28-30]. Games have been shown to be efficacious in promoting fitness, improving weight management, and improving safer sex skills [27,28,30,31]. For example, an HIV and AIDS prevention computer game called Life Challenge was developed by the New York State Department of Health to enhance safer sex negotiation by adolescents and young adults. The game showed significant improvement in self-efficacy for partner negotiation and condom skills for those who started with the least self-efficacy [30]. Two pregnancy prevention games, The Baby Game and Romance, designed for sexually active young adults, showed trends in improving knowledge and attitudes about parenting and unprotected sexual behaviors [29]. Video games have also been applied to improve self-management skills and healthy behaviors in those living with asthma, diabetes, and cancer [32-36]. For example, a video game named Re-Mission (tested with adolescents and young adults aged 13-29 years) was designed as an action-adventure in which the main character shoots cancer-causing agents in the bloodstream. In a randomized control study, 375 male and female participants who played Re-Mission had significantly improved adherence to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP/SMX; P=.01) and 6-mercaptopurine (P=.002) after an average of only 10.7 hours of play. Adherence to TMP/SMX by those playing Re-Mission was 19% greater than those in the control group. Self-efficacy (P=.01) and knowledge (P=.03) also increased [35,36]. Thus, appealing interactive games can target information, motivation, and skills for medical care and have led to a broad spectrum of desirable health outcomes including increases in knowledge, attitude changes, and increased medication adherence [27,31,37-39].

Gaps in Literature

Despite the promise and popularity of digital games, there is a paucity of interventions or publications related to gaming for persons on PrEP [40]. Relatedly, there are games in development for YMSM either living with HIV or at risk for HIV [41-45]. For example, our research group has developed a gaming

XSL•FO
RenderX

intervention to improve antiretroviral treatment (ART) adherence for youth and young adults living with HIV that informs the development of this game [40]. LeGrand et al have published a description of the development phase of a game entitled Epic Allies. Epic Allies is designed to improve ART uptake, engagement in care, and adherence among HIV positive YMSM and transgender women who have sex with men. While playing Epic Allies, users can earn medals and tokens for taking medications and reading health-related studies. [42]. Another intervention called PlayForward aims to reduce the risk for HIV among at-risk, ethnic, and racial minority adolescents. This tablet-based game provides an interactive world using an avatar where players face challenges such as peer pressure to drink alcohol or engage in other risky sexual behaviors [43]. A mobile phone–optimized intervention entitled healthMpowerment is designed to reduce sexual risk behaviors among YMSM. In this intervention, YMSM can acquire reputation points through reading information about HIV, playing sexually transmitted infection (STI)–related games, and through positive interactions with other users. Despite the promise and popularity of digital games, there are no published or presented abstracts related to gaming for persons on PrEP that we could find.

This Study

We developed a gaming intervention to improve adherence to PrEP for YMSM aged 18 to 35 years. This intervention integrates a smart pill bottle cap (that measures adherence) with an iPhone game. The gaming intervention was informed by the information-motivation-behavioral skills (IMB) theory of learning. The IMB model, consistent with social learning theory, is broadly applicable and can be used to guide game development and create theoretically consistent gaming content [46-50]. The iPhone gaming app was designed for participants to experience absorbing action-oriented adventures that increase information about their health (eg, knowledge about PrEP and HIV prevention and adherence), improve motivation (eg, action figures experience health benefits of adherence to PrEP), and build skills (action figures interact with clinicians at appointments, take medications as prescribed, and practice safe sex; see Multimedia Appendices 1-13). Adherence (measured by the smart pill bottle cap) and game-related text messages are integrated into the gaming intervention. Multiple reviews have demonstrated that behavioral interventions shown to be most efficacious are those tailored for the target population and preceded by formative research to inform intervention development [51,52]. The aim of this study was to describe the development of this iPhone gaming app entitled ViralCombat.

Methods

Gaming App Development

Development of ViralCombat was accomplished using iterative and collaborative procedures to integrate the clinical experiences of YMSM taking PrEP, academic researchers, and technology partners. Game development was guided by qualitative interviews with a group of MSM aged between 18 and 35 years taking PrEP. Guided by the principles of agile software development [53], the qualitative interviews and the game and app programming were synergistic. Agile software development aims for continuous design testing and adaptation based on continuous feedback [53].

Sample and Recruitment

Males aged between 18 and 35 years were eligible for enrollment in the study according to the following criteria: (1) English-speaking, (2) currently taking PrEP, (3) reported having sex with other men, and (4) able to give consent and not impaired by cognitive or medical limitations as per clinical assessment. Those who did not meet the abovementioned inclusion criteria were excluded. We recruited 20 YMSM for qualitative interviews to guide game development after institutional review board's (IRB) approval. Subjects were from a convenience sample recruited from a PrEP clinic in Jackson, Mississippi, between October 2016 and June 2017. Subjects were approached by research staff with an IRB-approved flyer, and written consent was obtained upon meeting with study staff for the qualitative interview. Overall, 20 subjects were approached over the course of the interviews, and all of them consented and completed the interview. Subjects were recruited until data saturation was achieved, and a relative balance in the sample was achieved based on age greater than 26 years versus younger. The mean age of participants was 26 years (range: 18-35 years; 11 out of the 20 were younger than 26 years). A majority of the participants (17/20, 85%) identified as African American, 100% (20/20) identified as MSM, 70% (13/20) completed 12th grade, 75% (15/20) had been taking PrEP longer than 6 months, 75% (15/20) reported missing a dose of PrEP in the previous week, 45% (9/20) reported missing 3 doses or more in the previous week, and 75% (5/20) had been taking PrEP for 6 months or longer.

Procedures

The study was approved by the hospital's IRB, and participant consent and interviews were conducted in a private room located in a PrEP clinic in Jackson, Mississippi. Interviews were conducted by 1 of the 2 MDs (psychiatrists) with support from a trained research assistant, and subjects were reimbursed US $50 per survey (for a total of US $150) for their time. The psychiatrists who conducted the interviews did not provide medical or clinical services in the HIV clinic. Interviews lasted between 45 and 60 min and were digitally recorded. As we adapted our gaming intervention from games that were already developed (Dr. Nano X and BattleViro), the system and the framework (eg, code, database, and design) were already in place at the beginning of the project. Adaptations to the game occurred as themes emerged from the interviews [41]. Biweekly meetings were held with the programmers to discuss all adaptations, including changes to content, game graphics framework, and game messaging.

Adaptation of the Information-Motivation-Behavioral Skills Adherence Gaming Intervention

The IMB gaming app for persons on PrEP, entitled ViralCombat, was adapted from the popular Mission Critical Studios game entitled Dr. Nano X as well as our previously developed game for persons on ART entitled BattleViro [40,41]. Dr. Nano X is a 5-star-rated mobile game (the highest rating possible) in the iTunes app store and is available on both Android and iPhone.

XSL•FO
RenderX

The ART adherence game, named BattleViro, has been previously described in the *Journal of Medical Internet Research* [41]. We worked directly with the development team at Mission Critical Studios to develop ViralCombat using Dr. Nano X and BattleViro as a basic framework. Adapting our game to promote PrEP adherence from already existing games greatly decreased the cost of the project. Characters, actions, and IMB messaging about PrEP were built specifically for ViralCombat; however, we were able to reuse backgrounds, mechanisms of game play and controls, and many sound effects from Dr. Nano X and BattleViro [54,55]. ViralCombat game levels are distinct from those in BattleViro, and they include organ systems such as the penis, anus, and mouth.

We worked iteratively with youth living with HIV and Mission Critical Studios to create the app. The game starts with a 45-second narrative movie that explains the storyline and game objectives. The player is told by the narrator, in a deep and dramatic voice, "you have been chosen, due to your smart decisions and healthy choices, to be cloned and shrunken in order to enter your own body to destroy attacking viruses and infections." The narrator emphasizes that "in order to acquire ammunition and strength, you must take you medication in real life and also pick up pills during play." Players are given a tutorial on game actions and can also design their individual and diverse characters. As players successfully battle HIV, engage with providers, and take medication, they move to new, distinctive levels (arterial system, penis, anus, and mouth). Messages from the doctors, nurses, and friends encourage and provide clues during difficult twists and turns in the battle. Answering quiz questions from clinician avatars allows each player to earn strength and points; wrong answers are corrected and explained. Players find medication, strength, and points by acting on positive suggestions. During each mission, the player's score (pill count and health) is shown. All character control and gaming is done by touch screen technology on the phone; no additional accessories are needed for play. Throughout the game, the terms "HIV" and "PrEP" are seen on the screen, but they are never part of an audio feature, so stigmatizing information cannot be overheard by another person. The game-related text messages have gaming graphics, similar to other apps and games, and the app uses push notifications to engage gamers in play. If players were less than 90% adherent during the week, phrases such as "Missing you in Combat" and "Get back in the game" are texted to their phones. Congratulatory short message service (SMS) text messages such as "Great job in battle" and "You are fighting off virus well" are sent for greater than 90% adherence (see Multimedia Appendix 2). Throughout gaming, the mission stays the same: kill the virus and build strength through taking medicine, learning information, improving motivation, and engaging with healthy characters to improve adherence to PrEP and build HIV preventative skills.

Interview Topics

Interviews with YMSM taking PrEP-guided game development were conducted. A total of 11 participants were shown the storyboard of the game and completed interviews. When the iPhone version became available, 9 participants were given the game on an iPhone, and their feedback was elicited through an interview. Therefore, qualitative feedback was received from all 20 participants. The interview guide consisted of focused but open-ended questions aimed at maximizing participant responses (see Textbox 1). Participants were asked about information relevant to medication adherence, motivating factors to adherence, and behavioral skills needed for adherence. The IMB model guided interview content, and participants were also queried about their general gaming experience and their reactions to the storyboard and gaming content.

Information Needed for Adherence

Participants were asked about knowledge and information that influences their adherence to PrEP and engagement in medical appointments. Questions included:

> *What type of information from doctors or friends makes it easier to take PrEP?*
>
> *What information makes it easier to come to PrEP related appointments?*

This part of the interview aimed to understand the specific knowledge about HIV and PrEP that promotes adherence behaviors. For example, some probes focused on how side effects and other health-related information can influence adherence to medication and care (for more examples, see Textbox 1).

Motivation for Adherence

Participants were queried about motivational issues related to adherence to PrEP with probes such as:

> *I would like to hear about what you think the serious issues are surrounding PrEP and taking medications to prevent HIV,*
>
> *What are the things that make it hard to take PrEP?*

This part of the interview was dedicated to understanding both personal and social motivations for adherence to PrEP. Queries were focused on the positive and negative attitudes toward taking PrEP, perceived negative effects of nonadherence to PrEP, and the individual's perceptions of social support from significant others, family, friends, and medical care providers (for more examples, see Textbox 1).

Behavioral Skills for Adherence

Participants were also asked about their ability to perform necessary adherence and HIV preventative tasks and their perceived self-efficacy for these tasks. Questions included:

> *What are the ways that you stay safe from HIV?*
>
> *What are the ways that you remember to take PrEP and remember your PrEP related appointments?*
>
> *What events in your life make it harder to remember to take PrEP? Or remember your appointments?*

XSL•FO
RenderX

Textbox 1. Qualitative interview guide based on the information-motivation-behavioral (IMB) skills model.

Information

- What knowledge or information about HIV and pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP) is helpful to know?
- What knowledge or information helps you to take PrEP daily?
- Does knowing about side effects change decision making around taking PrEP?

Motivation

- What are the main issues in coming for PrEP related medical appointments?
- What are the things that make it hard to take PrEP?
- What are the attitudes or feelings that people like you have that make it harder to take PrEP? Or easier to take PrEP?
- How do partners, your family, and your community play a role in adherence to PrEP related care?

Behavioral skills

- Do you use alarms, your phone, or reminders to remember to take PrEP?
- What do you do if you miss a dose of PrEP?
- What are the strategies for adherence to PrEP over time and across different situations?
- Are there things that you do such as eating, or avoiding certain substances, that make taking PrEP easier?

General gaming attitudes

- What is your reaction to getting some PrEP related and HIV related information and skills in a game?
- Do you ever play games that teach you facts or in which you learn something?
- Do you go online or use your phone to learn information about your health?
- Have you ever played a health-related game before on your phone or at a computer?

Reactions to ViralCombat

- What did you like and not like about the game?
- What do you think this activity is trying to teach you?
- How much did the material look like the other games that you play?
- How could this activity or content be improved for others like you?
- Now that you have seen this game, would you want to play it?
- Before you came here today, did you ever find anything like this on a game on a phone or on a computer?
- Would you be worried about playing the game when others could see it?
- What would you say if someone asked you about the game?

We also asked participants about strategies for self-reinforcement for adherence over time and across different situations. We asked questions such as:

> *Do you consciously think about your PrEP medication schedule on a long-term basis?*
>
> *What strategies have you used or developed to remember to take PrEP or to go to your appointments based on your activities?*

This part of the interview aimed to assess perceived abilities and strategies to store, obtain, and self-cue the use of medications despite challenges and across situations (for more examples, see Textbox 1).

General Gaming Attitudes

Participants were also asked about their general attitudes and experiences with games. Participants were asked questions such as:

> *What games do you, or people you know, play on the cellphone?*
>
> *What types of graphics, avatars, and rewards do you like? And what do you not like?*
>
> *How are games useful? Do you develop any skills when you play games?*

These queries elicited descriptions of popular game activities and attitudes about gaming. The responses were used to make the format and game mechanics of ViralCombat engaging and immersive (for more examples, see Textbox 1).

XSL•FO
RenderX

ViralCombat Storyboard and iPhone Game

Participants were asked for feedback about the storyboard or the iPhone game (once the mobile game was ready) with the probes such as:

> *What was the main point of this activity?*
>
> *What could you learn from this activity?*
>
> *Would you recommend this type of game to your friends?*
>
> *What is your reaction to having some HIV and PrEP related information and skills in an iPhone game?*

After the first version of the game was developed on the iPhone, participants were asked additional and modified probes such as:

> *Is the game easy to navigate and easy to understand?*
>
> *Did any part of the game not work?*
>
> *Are there other topics that the game should cover that it does not?*

Answers to these questions guided the iterative development of the game levels, actions, characters, and graphics (for more examples, see Textbox 1).

Medication Adherence Monitoring Tracking and Game-Related Text Messages

Participants were also asked about the electronic pill monitoring organizers and adherence-related text messages. We queried participants about the smart pill bottle cap that can electronically monitor, measure, and securely relay adherence pill bottle openings to our research team. Participants were asked about the use of reminder messages with a game-related graphic. Feedback was elicited about game-related messages if players missed a dose using texted phrases such as "Missing you in Combat" and "Get in the game." Feedback was also received about SMS text messages if doses are taken on time such as "Great job in battle" and "You are fighting off virus well!" (see Multimedia Appendix 2).

Quantitative Feasibility and Acceptability Data

The game was developed iteratively. A total of 11 participants were shown the storyboard of the game for approximately 30 min; qualitative feedback was elicited, and game development on the iPhone occurred. After the development of the iPhone version of ViralCombat, 9 of the 20 participants played the game for 45 to 50 min with the interviewer in the room (see Multimedia Appendices 1-13). These 9 participants were shown each of the game levels on the phone by the interviewer and played each level. After playing the game, these 9 participants completed qualitative interviews, and then, written or quantitative feedback was obtained. Quantitative feedback was collected from these 9 participants using versions of the Client Service Questionnaire (CSQ) and the session evaluation form (SEF) [56,57]. Both these instruments were developed to measure client satisfaction and perspectives on intervention aspects. The CSQ consists of 8 items that assess general satisfaction with the game. An example query from the CSQ is "In an overall, general sense, how satisfied are you with the game?" (for which the response options are 4="Very satisfied"; 3="Mostly satisfied"; 2="Indifferent or mildly dissatisfied"; and 1="Quite dissatisfied") [56]. We did not calculate an alpha coefficient for this sample because of the small number of participants completing the CSQ (n=9). In other studies, the internal consistency of the CSQ-8 is high, with alpha coefficients ranging from .84 to .93 for the CSQ [58]. The SEF contains 13 items that assess the feasibility and perceived utility of activities in the game. For example, the SEF states: "I will be able to apply what I learned from this game in my life" (for which the response options are 1="Strongly agree"; 2="Agree"; 3="Disagree"; and 4="Strongly disagree") [57]. As the SEF asks about specific the utility of separate elements of the intervention, and not about singular constructs, alpha coefficients for the SEF are not commonly calculated.

Data Analysis

Qualitative Data

Trained research assistants transcribed verbatim the digital audio recordings of each interview. Then, the MD- or PhD-level research team member reviewed the transcripts with the digital recording for accuracy. Qualitative data analysis followed the tenets of thematic analysis, which consisted of sequential steps [59,60], and interviews continued until data saturation was achieved. The research team familiarized themselves with the data, reviewing each transcription. Next, the research team met weekly and generated a list of codes as they emerged. The team generated a thematic table of the analyses and checked the extent to which the emerging themes reflected the coded data [59,61]. The team grouped the themes under the general categories of the interview guide (ART information, ART motivation, ART behavioral skills, general game attitudes, and reactions to ViralCombat). Themes were examined in their relation to perceived utility of the game and for factors that would improve or detract from the game's impact. Team discussion and interviews continued until discrepancies were resolved.

Quantitative Data

Participant responses on the CSQ and SEF were entered into an Excel file, and responses were verified with a second entry. Categorical response frequencies were calculated for each item of both scales. General acceptability of the intervention is illustrated using individual items from the scales. CSQ items are reported using the proportion of participants endorsing satisfaction with the intervention (response options "Very satisfied" and "Mostly satisfied" were combined). SEF items are reported using the proportion endorsing "agreement" with feasibility and utility of the game (response options "Strongly agree" and "Agree" were combined).

Results

Reactions to ViralCombat Storyboard and iPhone Game

Interviews from both the storyboard and iPhone game revealed a number of themes that guided game development. Participants desired informational game content that included new and comprehensive details about PrEP, details about PrEP as it relates to doctors' visits, and general health information.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Motivational themes that emerged were the desire for enhancement of future orientation; reinforcement of positive influences from peers, partners, and friends; collaboration with health care providers; decreasing stigma; and increasing personal relevance of HIV prevention. Behavioral skills themes centered around self-efficacy and strategies for PrEP adherence and medical care (see Textbox 2 for qualitative interview themes and resulting game adaptations based on the IMB model).

Textbox 2 highlights the barriers and facilitators to adherence expressed by our participants and the corresponding gaming app action or message that was adapted to enhance facilitators or challenge barriers. Textbox 2 also includes general gaming attitudes that influenced the development of ViralCombat and specific reactions to the ViralCombat storyboard and iPhone game. In addition to the themes in Textbox 2, participants who played the game on the phone said that important gaming characteristics included directly destroying and fighting off HIV in game play, earning health points by taking pills that looked like PrEP, a prologue or introduction with a dramatic voice-over, and images about HIV and STIs that were relevant. Participants wanted levels that become increasingly difficult (for a sense of accomplishment). Participants did not want HIV or PrEP in the title of the game because of concerns about privacy and stigma but wanted to fight graphics labeled "HIV" and wanted to see the word PrEP during gaming. A 29-year-old black male participant said:

> *I like that the organ systems are the penis and the anus, it's funny, but also realistic. It helped me learn about how infection with HIV happens.*

A 30-year-old white male participant said:

> *It was awesome to shoot HIV virus before it enters the body, and I like that HIV looked like it would under a microscope.*

An 18-year-old black male stated:

> *I liked taking pills that look exactly like PrEP; it's like my real-life.*

A 21-year-old white male stated (see Textbox 2):

> *It was cool that I am playing a game about preventing, that it was like tailored to me and my friends.*
>
> *I think my other friends who think about HIV would like playing this.*
>
> *The music and sound is really awesome.*

The game was iteratively changed as comments were received that indicated a need for alteration. For example, facts about HIV prevention and the benefits of adherence to PrEP were made more sophisticated when multiple participants gave feedback such that they knew most of the information given in the game and that they wanted more detailed information about side effects. Many participants also asked for information about substance use. A representative comment was from a 19-year-old black male who said:

> *I think there should be facts in the game about other health stuff, about smoking and drinking on PrEP.*

Many participants also wanted more guidance through the levels. For example, a 29-year-old white male participant stated:

> *I would like better hints on each level on how to beat the level.*

An 18-year-old black male said (see Textbox 2):

> *Clues or hints when it gets hard would make this better.*

Monitoring Pill Bottle Opening and Game-Related Text Messages

We asked participants about the SMS text messages with gaming graphics and the use of a smart pill cap that measured adherence. During the interviews, we demonstrated how openings of the pill bottle were measured wirelessly, and we showed participants sample adherence-informed SMS text messages. When looking at the smart pill cap, an 18-year-old black male participant stated:

> *It's cool how it links with game.*
>
> *It's awesome that there is a bottle that knows what you are doing.*

The feedback about the cap was extremely positive; however, a 19-year-old black male participant stated:

> *The pill cap is OK, I don't love how big it is. People can see it in my bookbag more.*

A 26-year-old white male described:

> *It would be better if it was a bit smaller, but I like that it can record when I take pills, that helps me.*

Although 2 participants had negative remarks about the size of the pill bottle, 18 out of 20 participants responded they liked the cap design and did not think the size of the cap was an impediment to use. During interviews, participants were also shown SMS text messages that corresponded to adherence data from the smart pill cap. Participants liked the proposed SMS text messages, and an 18-year-old black male described:

> *These texts cue me to take my meds.*

A 30-year-old black male stated:

> *I like the game pictures.*
>
> *...the texts made me smile and also I felt like they were just for me.*

A 35-year-old black male participant described:

> *The texts got me in the mood to play the game again.*

Of the participants, 3 described that they wanted more variation in the game-related texts:

> *Seeing the same graphics again and again is boring.* [35-year-old black male and a 19-year-old black male]

An 18-year-old black male stated:

> *I would like more variety in the game texts.*

XSL•FO
RenderX

Textbox 2. Qualitative interview themes and resulting game adaptations based on the information-motivation-behavioral skills (IMB) model.

Information

- New and comprehensive details about pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP) and how PrEP prevents HIV
  - Game includes complex and realistic information about PrEP. Participants fight off HIV in each organ. HIV is graphically represented. Facts about HIV and PrEP are imparted at every level. HIV is pictured.
- PrEP as it relates to doctors' visits
  - Terms and verbiage often used at PrEP-related doctor visits are used and defined in the game frequently. The importance of regular HIV testing and testing for other STIs is explained.
- General health information
  - Participants learn about sexually transmitted infections that PrEP does not protect them from getting (gonorrhea, syphilis, herpes, genital warts, and human papillomavirus).
  - Participants in the game receive messages about how exercise and healthy eating also affect health. Participants also receive messages about avoiding illicit substances and how illicit substances can increase risk behavior.

Motivation

- Enhancement of future orientation
  - Messages about staying healthy for family, friends, and children scroll through game. As gaming participant takes more pills and builds more health, they are able to move through levels, receive more artillery, and have more success staying healthy.
- Personal relevance of HIV
  - Participants are shrunken down to enter into their own body to fight HIV. During game play, participants see how PrEP works to prevent HIV infection.
- Collaborating with health care providers
  - Throughout the game, participants partner with doctors to advance to the next level, build strength, and collect artillery.
- Reinforce influences from peers, partners, and friends
  - Scrolling messages remind gamers that staying healthy for partners, friends, and family is meaningful for themselves and for the loved ones in their lives.
- Decrease stigma
  - Participants are empowered to kill HIV before it enters the body and gain points with each healthy decision.
  - Adherence to PrEP is valued as healthy and smart decision-making.

Behavioral skills

- Self-efficacy for PrEP adherence and PrEP-related medical care
  - Solving problems and collecting pills or swallowing pills in the game leads to more points, which leads to more strength, more health, and more artillery. This leads to more game play. Perseverance throughout levels leads to success in the game.
- Strategies for medication adherence and self-care
  - Scrolling messages encourage the participant to use PrEP, schedule routine doctors' appointments, and ask providers or doctors questions about topics relevant to HIV prevention.

General gaming attitudes

- Desire for games with levels, sound effects, and colorful graphics. Ability to earn points in the game and choose avatars
  - Levels or organ systems become increasingly difficult (for a sense of accomplishment). Background music, sound effects, and dramatic voice-overs are included. Colorful graphics are included and change often. Choice of avatars is available. Participants earn points in the game by swallowing pills.

Reactions to ViralCombat

- Desire for game action that is realistic with relevant information about PrEP and HIV prevention.

XSL•FO
RenderX

- Participants can directly destroy HIV in game play, and graphics look like PrEP and HIV.
- Participants improve health and gain points in the game by taking virtual PrEP pills.
- Participants liked progression through organ systems, with information about PrEP and HIV that is pertinent to that organ system.

Acceptability and Feasibility

CSQ and SEF scores were available from participants who played the game on the iPhone for 45 to 50 min. The responses were generally quite positive, 88% (8/9) of the participants were satisfied with the activities in the game, 77% (7/9) learned a lot from this game, 88% (8/9) thought the game was well organized, 77% (7/9) felt game topics were interesting, 100% (9/9) felt they would recommend the game to a friend, 77% (7/9) felt game topics stimulated their interest in the material, 100% (9/9) felt that game topics were relevant to their lives, and 66% (6/9) felt they were able to do the activities in the game (see Table 1). The gaming intervention was improved based on the above acceptability and feasibility feedback from the CSQ and SEF and also on the feedback from the qualitative interviews (see Textbox 2). Specifically, game play was made easier with written messages and hints throughout each level on how to move forward. We also improved narrated instructions at the beginning of each level to assist players. General health facts about smoking, side effects of PrEP, and how substances such as drugs and alcohol can increase risky behavior were incorporated into the game to increase perceived relevance. We also incorporated more detailed information about HIV and how PrEP works to improve learning and interest. We also included a condom quiz game and information about other STIs (see Multimedia Appendices 7, 8, and 11). To improve SMS text messages, we included emojis and designed 5 different game-related SMS text messages utilizing a larger variety of game graphics based on participant feedback.

Table 1. iPhone game acceptability and feasibility scores (N=9).

Questionnaire or form	Participants endorsing statement, n (%)
Client Service Questionnaire	
How would you rate the quality of the game?	8 (88)[a]
Did you get desired information from the game?	6 (66)[a]
To what extent does the game's content meet your needs?	7 (77)[a]
If a friend were interested in a similar program, would you recommend our game to him or her?	9 (100)[a]
How satisfied are you with the amount of information you have received in the game?	7 (77)[a]
Has the information you received helped you to deal more effectively with issues important to you?	8 (88)[a]
In an overall, general sense, how satisfied are you with the game?	8 (88)[a]
Would you come back to the game again?	9 (100)[a]
Session evaluation form	
I learned a lot from the game.	7 (77)[b]
I will be able to apply what I learned from the game in my life.	6 (66)[b]
I was able to do the activities in the game.	8 (88)[b]
The game was well organized.	7 (77)[b]
The topic of the game was interesting.	7 (77)[b]
The presentation of the information stimulated my interest in the material.	9 (100)[b]
The topics of the game were relevant to my life.	8 (88)[b]
The game was enjoyable.	8 (88)[b]
I would recommend the game to others.	9 (100)[b]
I felt comfortable during game play.	9 (100)[b]

[a]Proportion of participants that endorsed "Very satisfied" and "Mostly satisfied."

[b]Proportion of participants that endorsed "Strongly agree" and "Agree."

XSL•FO
RenderX

Discussion

Principal Findings

In this project, we utilized in-depth interviewing, focused by social learning theory (IMB), to create an iPhone gaming intervention to measure and improve treatment PrEP adherence and decrease HIV risk for YMSM [46-48,53,62]. A number of themes emerged through qualitative interviews with young men that informed game development. We found that YMSM desired informational game content that included comprehensive details about how HIV is transmitted, PrEP-related doctors' visits, side effects of PrEP, and general health information. Motivational themes or findings that emerged were the desire for enhancement of future orientation; the need for reinforcement of positive influences from peers, partners, and friends; and the promotion of collaboration with health care providers. Motivational themes also included decreasing stigma and increasing personal relevance of HIV prevention. Behavioral skills themes or findings centered around self-efficacy and strategies for PrEP medication and appointment adherence including regular HIV and STI testing.

Using the IMB theory in the development of this game ensured that the intervention was informed by decades of prevention research. This study demonstrates that qualitative assessment, social learning theory, and agile software development can complement each other and are important components to the development of a tailored and clinically relevant app. Participant data were used throughout the development of the game and informed the informational, motivational, and behavioral skill-building components of the game. Using a storyboard provided the research team with opportunities to share concept models with participants early on in the design process and gather feedback with respect to necessary modifications. Sharing the iPhone game with participants as it was developed also allowed for necessary, incremental improvements. YMSM at risk of HIV infection provided key qualitative insights with respect to the content and design and process of the game. Tailored games that are informed by those who will use them have more potential for effective integration and uptake in clinical settings [41].

Although iPhone games are pervasive in popular culture, no other gaming apps have been developed for YMSM on PrEP. Findings of this study highlight several important barriers and facilitators to PREP adherence for YMSM. Mobile interventions have the potential to reinforce skills learned in the clinic and require fewer resources to deliver patient-centered, evidence-based interventions [63]. Furthermore, apps and mobile phone games have the potential to engage YMSM in interventions, who otherwise may not be willing or able to participate in intervention programs.

Gaming and mobile apps also have the potential to advance the delivery of information and promote healthy decision-making in disproportionately affected populations, including minority men who often have less access to medical care and support [60]. National data from the Pew Research Center indicate that younger, ethnic and racial minority populations use mobile phones frequently [64]. The adolescents and young adults in this study repeatedly expressed having access to, and familiarity with, iPhones. This widespread use of iPhones facilitates the uptake of gaming apps in clinical populations. Therefore, mobile technologies such as mobile phone games and apps have a great potential to enhance medical care and prevention interventions for populations who are disproportionately affected by HIV and other STIs.

Limitations

Findings should be interpreted in light of study limitations. First, our participants were recruited from a PrEP clinic in Jackson, Mississippi. This clinic may not be representative of all PrEP clinics in the United States or internationally. Therefore, the generalizability of the data collected to inform the development of the app is unknown and may be limited. Second, this study focused on individual PrEP user perspectives. It may be equally important to integrate the perspectives of clinicians, friends, or partners into the game. In the future, including friends and social networks into gaming prevention programs could be novel and effective. Perspectives of partners, friends, and clinicians could also lead to a more robust understanding of barriers and facilitators to adherence to PrEP and PrEP-related medical care. Therefore, future research could examine the utility of integrating feedback from clinicians and friends into the gaming app. Finally, this app was developed for the iPhone. Development of the app for Android devices could allow for greater availability of the game and could be a forthcoming step in the future phases of research.

Conclusions

This study is a significant step in the development and testing of an iPhone gaming app to promote adherence to PrEP and PrEP-related medical care. The long-term goal of this research program is to test ViralCombat in a randomized trial and examine if the game is effective in changing PrEP-related attitudes and adherence-related behaviors. If the results appear promising, the research team can distribute the technology procedures for the intervention to relevant and interested clinics, community-based organizations, the Centers for AIDS Research, and AIDS Trials Networks. The app could also be made available on iTunes and Google Play (Android) for a nominal fee.

There are many advantages to using newer interactive technology to improve adherence rather than traditional face-to-face counseling, including scalability, efficiency, and cost-effectiveness. As electronic games are highly appealing to young men [25], they are a natural opportunity to deliver health education during leisure time and outside of the clinic [25-27,52]. Games can attract and maintain attention, which is a key component for effective behavior change. Compelling interactive games can expose players to essential health-related content thousands of times and also give players unlimited opportunities to rehearse new skills and receive personalized feedback on health choices made within the game [28,35]. We are not aware of other adherence interventions that integrate medication adherence monitoring technology, SMS text messaging, and a theoretically informed game to improve information, motivation, and behavioral skills for PrEP adherence. An intervention with these components may

XSL•FO
RenderX

empower and engage YMSM, aid clinics, and result in improvements in health.

Acknowledgments

This publication was made possible with help from the Providence-Boston Center for AIDS Research (P30 AI 042853). The project described was supported by grant number R34MH104068 (MPI: LW, LKB) from the National Institute of Child Health and Human Development. The content is solely the responsibility of the authors and does not necessarily represent the official views of the National Institute of Mental Health.

Conflicts of Interest

LM is a member of the Gilead Sciences Advisory Board and receives compensation for consulting from Gilead Sciences, Inc. No competing financial interests exist for the remaining authors.

Multimedia Appendix 1

ViralCombat main menu graphic.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 66KB - games_v7i1e11861_app1.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 2

Example of a short message service text message to the participants.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 62KB - games_v7i1e11861_app2.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 3

ViralCombat game menu.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 37KB - games_v7i1e11861_app3.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 4

Short narrative movie at the beginning of the game.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 57KB - games_v7i1e11861_app4.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 5

Players can design and individualize their game character.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 47KB - games_v7i1e11861_app5.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 6

Players are shrunken down to be able to enter the body to fight off HIV.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 29KB - games_v7i1e11861_app6.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 7

Answering questions with allied doctors and building knowledge help each player successfully move to the next level or area of the body. Example of questions answered incorrectly.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 46KB - games_v7i1e11861_app7.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 8

Answering questions with allied doctors and building knowledge help each player successfully move to the next level or area of the body. Example of questions answered correctly.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 42KB - games_v7i1e11861_app8.pdf]

XSL•FO
RenderX

Multimedia Appendix 9

Example of a player gaining strength in the anus level by collecting health pills and condoms.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 23KB - games_v7i1e11861_app9.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 10

As players travel through the bloodstream, they must fight off viruses and gain health pills.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 51KB - games_v7i1e11861_app10.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 11

Throughout ViralCombat, players engage in various games in order to move on to the next level. In the Condom Sequence game, players must go through the correct sequence of steps for correctly using a condom.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 59KB - games_v7i1e11861_app11.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 12

Players prevent HIV and other sexually transmitted infections in the penis by killing viruses and other bacteria.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 54KB - games_v7i1e11861_app12.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 13

Summary of points earned at the end of each level.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 53KB - games_v7i1e11861_app13.pdf]

References

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. 2018. HIV in the United States: At a Glance URL: https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/statistics/overview/cdc-hiv-us-ataglance.pdf [accessed 2018-08-10] [WebCite Cache ID 71t9kz048]
2. Underhill K, Operario D, Skeer M, Mimiaga M, Mayer K. Packaging PrEP to prevent HIV: an integrated framework to plan for Pre-Exposure Prophylaxis implementation in clinical practice. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 2010 Sep;55(1):8-13 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181e8efe4] [Medline: 21423876]
3. Padian NS, Buvé A, Balkus J, Serwadda D, Cates W. Biomedical interventions to prevent HIV infection: evidence, challenges, and way forward. Lancet 2008 Aug 16;372(9638):585-599. [doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(08)60885-5] [Medline: 18687456]
4. Paxton LA, Hope T, Jaffe HW. Pre-exposure prophylaxis for HIV infection: what if it works? Lancet 2007 Jul 7;370(9581):89-93. [doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(07)61053-8] [Medline: 17617276]
5. Karim SS, Baxter C. Antiretroviral prophylaxis for the prevention of HIV infection: future implementation challenges. HIV Ther 2009 Jan;3(1):3-6. [doi: 10.2217/17584310.3.1.3]
6. Rotheram-Borus MJ, Swendeman D, Chovnick G. The past, present, and future of HIV prevention: integrating behavioral, biomedical, and structural intervention strategies for the next generation of HIV prevention. Annu Rev Clin Psychol 2009;5:143-167 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1146/annurev.clinpsy.032408.153530] [Medline: 19327028]
7. Liu AY, Grant RM, Buchbinder SP. Preexposure prophylaxis for HIV: unproven promise and potential pitfalls. J Am Med Assoc 2006 Aug 16;296(7):863-865. [doi: 10.1001/jama.296.7.863] [Medline: 16905792]
8. Mayer KH, Wheeler DP, Bekker L, Grinsztejn B, Remien RH, Sandfort TGM, et al. Overcoming biological, behavioral, and structural vulnerabilities: new directions in research to decrease HIV transmission in men who have sex with men. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 2013 Jul;63 Suppl 2:S161-S167 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e318298700e] [Medline: 23764630]
9. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Interim guidance: preexposure prophylaxis for the prevention of HIV infection in men who have sex with men. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2011 Jan 28;60(3):65-68 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1097/COH.0b013e328358e49e] [Medline: 21270743]
10. Paltiel AD, Freedberg KA, Scott CA, Schackman BR, Losina E, Wang B, et al. HIV preexposure prophylaxis in the United States: impact on lifetime infection risk, clinical outcomes, and cost-effectiveness. Clin Infect Dis 2009 Mar 15;48(6):806-815 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1086/597095] [Medline: 19193111]
11. Cahill S, Taylor SW, Elsesser SA, Mena L, Hickson D, Mayer KH. Stigma, medical mistrust, and perceived racism may affect PrEP awareness and uptake in black compared to white gay and bisexual men in Jackson, Mississippi and Boston, Massachusetts. AIDS Care 2017 Nov;29(11):1351-1358 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1080/09540121.2017.1300633] [Medline: 28286983]

XSL•FO
RenderX

12. Arnold T, Brinkley-Rubinstein L, Chan PA, Perez-Brumer A, Bologna ES, Beauchamps L, et al. Social, structural, behavioral and clinical factors influencing retention in Pre-Exposure Prophylaxis (PrEP) care in Mississippi. PLoS One 2017;12(2):e0172354 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0172354] [Medline: 28222118]
13. Abbas UL, Anderson RM, Mellors JW. Potential impact of antiretroviral chemoprophylaxis on HIV-1 transmission in resource-limited settings. PLoS One 2007 Sep 19;2(9):e875 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0000875] [Medline: 17878928]
14. Desai K, Sansom SL, Ackers ML, Stewart SR, Hall HI, Hu DJ, et al. Modeling the impact of HIV chemoprophylaxis strategies among men who have sex with men in the United States: HIV infections prevented and cost-effectiveness. AIDS 2008 Sep 12;22(14):1829-1839. [doi: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32830e00f5] [Medline: 18753932]
15. Golub SA, Kowalczyk W, Weinberger CL, Parsons JT. Preexposure prophylaxis and predicted condom use among high-risk men who have sex with men. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 2010 Aug;54(5):548-555 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181e19a54] [Medline: 20512046]
16. Amico KR, Mansoor LE, Corneli A, Torjesen K, van der Straten A. Adherence support approaches in biomedical HIV prevention trials: experiences, insights and future directions from four multisite prevention trials. AIDS Behav 2013 Jul;17(6):2143-2155 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1007/s10461-013-0429-9] [Medline: 23435697]
17. Brown A. Pew Research Center. 2017 Sep 11. Younger men play video games, but so do a diverse group of other Americans URL: https://tinyurl.com/y8msj4wu [accessed 2018-05-23] [WebCite Cache ID 6zdTwWlPl]
18. Lenhart A, Jones S, Macgill A. Pew Research Center. 2008 Dec 7. Asults and Video Games URL: http://www.pewinternet.org/2008/12/07/adults-and-video-games/ [accessed 2018-05-23] [WebCite Cache ID 6zdTQypJO]
19. Shaw A. Putting the gay in games: cultural production and GLBT content in video games. Games Cult 2009 Jun 23;4(3):228-253. [doi: 10.1177/1555412009339729]
20. Lumpkin B. MTV News. 2007 Apr 12. Gay gamers push for more player choice, like same-sex smooching in 'Bully' URL: http://www.mtv.com/news/1557022/gay-gamers-push-for-more-player-choice-like-same-sex-smooching-in-bully/ [accessed 2018-05-23] [WebCite Cache ID 6zdUH7DQp]
21. Community Marketing & Insights. 2012 LGBT Community Survey URL: http://www.communitymarketinginc.com/documents/CMI_6th_LGBT_Community_Survey_USv1.pdf [accessed 2018-05-23] [WebCite Cache ID 6zdUQe0rf]
22. Rainie L. Pew Research Center. 2012 Sep 11. Two-thirds of young adults and those with higher income are smartphone owners URL: http://www.pewinternet.org/wp-content/uploads/sites/9/media/Files/Reports/2012/PIP_Smartphones_Sept12-9-10-12.pdf [accessed 2018-05-23] [WebCite Cache ID 6zdUbZqls]
23. Pew Research Center. 2008 Mar 5. Mobile access to data and information URL: http://www.pewinternet.org/2008/03/05/mobile-access-to-data-and-information-3/ [WebCite Cache ID 6zdUjEYSe]
24. Swendeman D, Rotheram-Borus MJ. Innovation in sexually transmitted disease and HIV prevention: internet and mobile phone delivery vehicles for global diffusion. Curr Opin Psychiatry 2010 Mar;23(2):139-144 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1097/YCO.0b013e328336656a] [Medline: 20087189]
25. Raney AA, Smith JK, Baker K. Adolescents and the appeal of video games. In: Voderer P, Bryant J, editors. Playing Video Games: Motives, Responses and Consequences. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum; 2006:165-180.
26. Lee KM, Peng W. What do we know about social and psychological effects of computer games? A comprehensive review of the current literature. In: Vorderer P, Bryant J, editors. Playing Video Games: Motives, Responses and Consequences. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum; 2006:325-346.
27. Lieberman DA. Interactive video games for health promotion: effects on knowledge, self-efficacy, social support, and health. In: Street RL, Gold WR, Manning T, editors. Health Promotion and Interactive Technology: Theoretical Applications and Future Directions. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum; 1997:103-120.
28. Lieberman DA. What can we learn from playing interactive games? In: Vorderer P, Bryant J, editors. Playing Video Games: Motives, Responses and Consequences. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum; 2006:379-398.
29. Paperny DM, Starn JR. Adolescent pregnancy prevention by health education computer games: computer-assisted instruction of knowledge and attitudes. Pediatrics 1989 May;83(5):742-752. [Medline: 2654867]
30. Thomas R, Cahill J, Santilli L. Using an interactive computer game to increase skill and self-efficacy regarding safer sex negotiation: field test results. Health Educ Behav 1997 Feb;24(1):71-86. [doi: 10.1177/109019819702400108] [Medline: 9112099]
31. Baranowski T, Buday R, Thompson DI, Baranowski J. Playing for real: video games and stories for health-related behavior change. Am J Prev Med 2008 Jan;34(1):74-82 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1016/j.amepre.2007.09.027] [Medline: 18083454]
32. Homer C, Susskind O, Alpert HR, Owusu MS, Schneider L, Rappaport LA, et al. An evaluation of an innovative multimedia educational software program for asthma management: report of a randomized, controlled trial. Pediatrics 2000 Jul;106(1 Pt 2):210-215. [Medline: 10888694]
33. Brown SJ, Lieberman DA, Gemeny BA, Fan YC, Wilson DM, Pasta DJ. Educational video game for juvenile diabetes: results of a controlled trial. Med Inform (London) 1997;22(1):77-89. [doi: 10.3109/14639239709089835] [Medline: 9183781]
34. Shames RS, Sharek P, Mayer M, Robinson TN, Hoyte EG, Gonzalez-Hensley F, et al. Effectiveness of a multicomponent self-management program in at-risk, school-aged children with asthma. Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol 2004 Jun;92(6):611-618. [doi: 10.1016/S1081-1206(10)61426-3] [Medline: 15237762]

XSL•FO
RenderX

35. Cole S, Kato P, Marin-Bowling V, Dahl G, Pollock B. Clinical trial of Re-Mission: a video game for young people with cancer. Cyberpsychol Behav 2006 Dec;9(6):665-666.
36. Kato PM, Cole SW, Bradlyn AS, Pollock BH. A video game improves behavioral outcomes in adolescents and young adults with cancer: a randomized trial. Pediatrics 2008 Aug;122(2):e305-e317 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1542/peds.2007-3134] [Medline: 18676516]
37. Thompson D, Baranowski T, Buday R, Baranowski J, Thompson V, Jago R, et al. Serious video games for health: how behavioral science guided the development of a serious video game. Simul Gaming 2010 Aug 1;41(4):587-606 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1177/1046878108328087] [Medline: 20711522]
38. Wideman HH, Owston RD, Brown C, Kushniruk A, Ho F, Pitts KC. York University.: Simulation & Gaming; 2016 Aug 18. Unpacking the potential of educational gaming: A new tool for gaming research URL: http://www.yorku.ca/rowston/unpacking.pdf [accessed 2019-01-21] [WebCite Cache ID 75amW4Ptv]
39. Stokes B. Benjamin Stokes.: The Development Education Journal; 2005 Jun. Video games have changed: Time to consider 'serious games'? URL: https://tinyurl.com/y2tktoxp [accessed 2018-05-23] [WebCite Cache ID 6zdY5JWne]
40. Hightow-Weidman LB, Muessig KE, Bauermeister JA, LeGrand S, Fiellin LE. The future of digital games for HIV prevention and care. Curr Opin HIV AIDS 2017 Sep;12(5):501-507. [doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000399] [Medline: 28692490]
41. Whiteley L, Brown L, Lally M, Heck N, van den Berg JJ. A mobile gaming intervention to increase adherence to antiretroviral treatment for youth living with HIV: development guided by the information, motivation, and behavioral skills model. JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2018 Apr 23;6(4):e96 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/mhealth.8155] [Medline: 29685863]
42. LeGrand S, Muessig KE, McNulty T, Soni K, Knudtson K, Lemann A, et al. Epic Allies: development of a gaming app to improve antiretroviral therapy adherence among young HIV-positive men who have sex with men. JMIR Serious Games 2016 May 13;4(1):e6 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/games.5687] [Medline: 27178752]
43. Fiellin LE, Kyriakides TC, Hieftje KD, Pendergrass TM, Duncan LR, Dziura JD, et al. The design and implementation of a randomized controlled trial of a risk reduction and human immunodeficiency virus prevention videogame intervention in minority adolescents: PlayForward: Elm City Stories. Clin Trials 2016 Aug;13(4):400-408 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1177/1740774516637871] [Medline: 27013483]
44. Lukhele BW, Musumari P, El-Saaidi C, Techasrivichien T, Suguimoto SP, Kihara MO, et al. Efficacy of mobile serious games in increasing HIV risk perception in Swaziland: a randomized control trial (SGprev Trial) research protocol. JMIR Res Protoc 2016 Nov 22;5(4):e224 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/resprot.6543] [Medline: 27876685]
45. Baltierra NB, Muessig KE, Pike EC, LeGrand S, Bull SS, Hightow-Weidman LB. More than just tracking time: complex measures of user engagement with an internet-based health promotion intervention. J Biomed Inform 2016 Feb;59:299-307. [doi: 10.1016/j.jbi.2015.12.015] [Medline: 26732997]
46. Fisher WA, Williams SS, Fisher JD, Malloy TE. Understanding AIDS risk behavior among sexually active urban adolescents: an empirical test of the information-motivation-behavioral skills model. AIDS Behav 1999 Mar;3(1):13-23. [doi: 10.1023/A:1025411317851]
47. Fisher JD, Fisher WA, Misovich SJ, Kimble DL, Malloy TE. Changing AIDS risk behavior: effects of an intervention emphasizing AIDS risk reduction information, motivation, and behavioral skills in a college student population. Health Psychol 1996 Mar;15(2):114-123. [doi: 10.1037/0278-6133.15.2.114] [Medline: 8681919]
48. Fisher JD, Fisher WA, Amico KR, Harman JJ. An information-motivation-behavioral skills model of adherence to antiretroviral therapy. Health Psychol 2006 Jul;25(4):462-473. [doi: 10.1037/0278-6133.25.4.462] [Medline: 16846321]
49. Simoni JM, Montgomery A, Martin E, New M, Demas PA, Rana S. Adherence to antiretroviral therapy for pediatric HIV infection: a qualitative systematic review with recommendations for research and clinical management. Pediatrics 2007 Jun;119(6):e1371-e1383 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1542/peds.2006-1232] [Medline: 17533177]
50. Bandura A. Social Foundations of Thought and Action: A Social Cognitive Theory. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall; 1986.
51. Romero LM, Galbraith JS, Wilson-Williams L, Gloppen KM. HIV prevention among African American youth: how well have evidence-based interventions addressed key theoretical constructs? AIDS Behav 2011 Jul;15(5):976-991. [doi: 10.1007/s10461-010-9745-5] [Medline: 20635131]
52. Resnicow K, DiIorio CK, Davis R. Culture and development of HIV prevention and treatment programs. In: Edgar T, Noar S, Freimuth V, editors. Communication Perspectives on HIV/AIDS for the 21st Century. New York, NY: Lawrence Erlbaum; 2008:193-220.
53. Dybå T, Dingsøyr T. Empirical studies of agile software development: a systematic review. Inform Software Tech 2008 Aug;50(9-10):833-859. [doi: 10.1016/j.infsof.2008.01.00]
54. Mission Critical Studios. YouTube. 2010 Dec 1. Dr Nano X: Incredible Voyage Inside The Body URL: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=lyHzSZFzU1Q [accessed 2017-06-06] [WebCite Cache ID 6r1LcuL4s]
55. Mission Critical Studios. iTunes. Dr Nano X: Incredible Voyage - Lite URL: https://itunes.apple.com/us/app/dr-nano-x-incredible-voyage-lite/id398377065?mt=8 [accessed 2017-06-06] [WebCite Cache ID 6r1MCRrm2]
56. Larsen DL, Attkisson C, Hargreaves WA, Nguyen TD. Assessment of client/patient satisfaction: development of a general scale. Eval Program Plann 1979 Jan;2(3):197-207. [doi: 10.1016/0149-7189(79)90094-6] [Medline: 10245370]

XSL•FO
RenderX

57. Harper GW, Riplinger AJ. HIV prevention interventions for adolescents and young adults: what about the needs of gay and bisexual males? AIDS Behav 2013 Mar;17(3):1082-1095. [doi: 10.1007/s10461-012-0178-1] [Medline: 22460226]
58. Gaston L, Sabourin S. Client satisfaction and social desirability in psychotherapy. Eval Program Plann 1992 Jul;15(3):227-231. [doi: 10.1016/0149-7189(92)90085-9]
59. Braun V, Clarke V. Using thematic analysis in psychology. Qual Res Psychol 2006 Jan;3(2):77-101. [doi: 10.1191/1478088706qp063oa]
60. Arya M, Kumar D, Patel S, Street RL, Giordano TP, Viswanath K. Mitigating HIV health disparities: the promise of mobile health for a patient-initiated solution. Am J Public Health 2014 Dec;104(12):2251-2255. [doi: 10.2105/AJPH.2014.302120] [Medline: 25322292]
61. Guest G, MacQueen C, Namey EE. Applied Thematic Analysis. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, Inc; 2012.
62. Starace F, Massa A, Amico KR, Fisher JD. Adherence to antiretroviral therapy: an empirical test of the information-motivation-behavioral skills model. Health Psychol 2006 Mar;25(2):153-162. [doi: 10.1037/0278-6133.25.2.153] [Medline: 16569106]
63. Gerbert B, Berg-Smith S, Mancuso M, Caspers N, McPhee S, Null D, et al. Using innovative video doctor technology in primary care to deliver brief smoking and alcohol intervention. Health Promot Pract 2003 Jul;4(3):249-261. [doi: 10.1177/1524839903004003009] [Medline: 14610995]
64. Smith A, McGeeney K, Duggan M, Rainie L, Keeter S. Pew Research Center. 2015. US Smartphone Use in 2015 URL: http://www.pewinternet.org/2015/04/01/us-smartphone-use-in-2015/ [accessed 2019-01-21] [WebCite Cache ID 75aq2AOok]

Abbreviations

ART: antiretroviral treatment
CSQ: Client Service Questionnaire
IMB: information-motivation-behavioral skills
IRB: institutional review board
MSM: men who have sex with men
PrEP: pre-exposure prophylaxis
SEF: session evaluation form
SMS: short message service
STI: sexually transmitted infection
TMP/SMX: trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
YMSM: young men who have sex with men

Edited by G Eysenbach; submitted 23.08.18; peer-reviewed by J Vandenberg, L Hightow-Weidman; comments to author 12.10.18; revised version received 05.12.18; accepted 09.12.18; published 27.03.19.

Please cite as:
Whiteley L, Mena L, Craker LK, Healy MG, Brown LK
Creating a Theoretically Grounded Gaming App to Increase Adherence to Pre-Exposure Prophylaxis: Lessons From the Development of the Viral Combat Mobile Phone Game
JMIR Serious Games 2019;7(1):e11861
URL: http://games.jmir.org/2019/1/e11861/
doi:10.2196/11861
PMID:30916652

©Laura Whiteley, Leandro Mena, Lacey K Craker, Meredith Garver Healy, Larry K Brown. Originally published in JMIR Serious Games (http://games.jmir.org), 27.03.2019. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR Serious Games, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://games.jmir.org, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.

XSL•FO
RenderX

Publisher:
JMIR Publications
130 Queens Quay East.
Toronto, ON, M5A 3Y5
Phone: (+1) 416-583-2040
Email: support@jmir.org

XSL•FO
RenderX